Thomas A. Runkler

# Data Analytics 

Models and Algorithms for Intelligent Data Analysis
9) Springer Vieweg Www.allitebooks.com

## Data Analytics

www.allitebooks.com

Thomas A. Runkler

## Data Analytics

Models and Algorithms for Intelligent Data Analysis

Prof. Dr. Thomas A. Runkler<br>Siemens AG, München und Technische Universität München<br>Germany

ISBN 978-3-8348-2588-9
ISBN 978-3-8348-2589-6 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-8348-2589-6

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012912256
Vieweg+Teubner
© Vieweg+Teubner Verlag | Springer Fachmedien Wiesbaden 2012
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed. Exempted from this legal reservation are brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis or material supplied specifically for the purpose of being entered and executed on a computer system, for exclusive use by the purchaser of the work. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the Copyright Law of the Publisher s location, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Permissions for use may be obtained through RightsLink at the Copyright Clearance Center. Violations are liable to prosecution under the respective Copyright Law.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Printed on acid-free paper
Springer Vieweg is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer-vieweg.de)

## Preface

The information in the world doubles every 20 months. Important data sources are business and industrial processes, text and structured data bases, image and biomedical data. Many applications show that data analytics can provide huge benefits. We need models and algorithms to collect, preprocess, analyze, and evaluate data, from various fields such as statistics, system theory, machine learning, pattern recognition, or computational intelligence. With this book you will learn about the most important methods and algorithms for data analytics. You will be able to choose appropriate methods for specific tasks and apply these in your own data analytics projects. You will understand the basic concepts of the growing field of data analytics, which will allow you to keep pace and to actively contribute to the advancement of the field.

This text is designed for undergraduate and graduate courses on data analytics for engineering, computer science, and math students. It is also suitable for practitioners working on data analytics projects. The book is structured according to typical practical data analytics projects. Only basic mathematics is required. This is the third edition of a book that has been used for more than ten years in numerous courses at the Technical University of Munich, Germany, in short courses at several other universities, and in tutorials at international scientific conferences. Much of the content is based on the results of industrial research and development projects at Siemens.

The author wishes to express his sincere appreciation to everybody who has supported this work, in particular Wilfried Brauer, Jim Bezdek, Javier Esparza, Ralph Grothmann, Hans Hellendoorn, Jürgen Hollatz, Eyke Hüllermeyer, Uzay Kaymak, Jim Keller, Frank Klawonn, Rudolf Kruse, Rainer Palm, Bernd Schürmann, João Sousa, and Hans-Georg Zimmermann, the reviewers and students for pointing out errors and suggesting improvements, and the editorial and publisher team for their professional collaboration.

## Contents

1 Introduction ..... 1
1.1 It's All About Data ..... 1
1.2 Data Analytics, Data Mining, and Knowledge Discovery ..... 2
References ..... 3
2 Data and Relations ..... 5
2.1 The Iris Data Set ..... 5
2.2 Data Scales ..... 7
2.3 Set and Matrix Representations ..... 9
2.4 Relations ..... 10
2.5 Dissimilarity Measures ..... 11
2.6 Similarity Measures ..... 13
2.7 Sequence Relations ..... 15
2.8 Sampling and Quantization ..... 17
Problems ..... 19
References ..... 20
3 Data Preprocessing ..... 21
3.1 Error Types ..... 21
3.2 Error Handling ..... 24
3.3 Filtering ..... 25
3.4 Data Transformation ..... 30
3.5 Data Merging ..... 33
Problems ..... 33
References ..... 33
4 Data Visualization ..... 35
4.1 Diagrams ..... 35
4.2 Principal Component Analysis ..... 37
4.3 Multidimensional Scaling ..... 41
4.4 Sammon Mapping ..... 44
4.5 Auto-Associator ..... 47
4.6 Histograms ..... 48
4.7 Spectral Analysis ..... 50
Problems ..... 53
References ..... 54
5 Correlation ..... 55
5.1 Linear Correlation ..... 55
5.2 Correlation and Causality ..... 57
5.3 Chi-Square Test for Independence ..... 58
Problems ..... 60
References ..... 61
6 Regression ..... 63
6.1 Linear Regression ..... 63
6.2 Linear Regression with Nonlinear Substitution ..... 67
6.3 Robust Regression ..... 68
6.4 Neural Networks ..... 68
6.5 Radial Basis Function Networks ..... 72
6.6 Cross-Validation ..... 74
6.7 Feature Selection ..... 76
Problems ..... 77
References ..... 77
7 Forecasting ..... 79
7.1 Finite State Machines ..... 79
7.2 Recurrent Models ..... 80
7.3 Autoregressive Models ..... 82
Problems ..... 83
References ..... 83
8 Classification ..... 85
8.1 Classification Criteria ..... 85
8.2 Naive Bayes Classifier ..... 88
8.3 Linear Discriminant Analysis ..... 91
8.4 Support Vector Machine ..... 93
8.5 Nearest Neighbor Classifier ..... 95
8.6 Learning Vector Quantization ..... 96
8.7 Decision Trees ..... 97
Problems ..... 100
References ..... 101
9 Clustering ..... 103
9.1 Cluster Partitions ..... 103
9.2 Sequential Clustering ..... 105
9.3 Prototype-Based Clustering ..... 107
9.4 Fuzzy Clustering ..... 109
9.5 Relational Clustering ..... 114
9.6 Cluster Tendency Assessment ..... 117
9.7 Cluster Validity ..... 118
9.8 Self-Organizing Map ..... 119
Problems ..... 120
References ..... 121
A Brief Review of Some Optimization Methods ..... 123
A. 1 Optimization with Derivatives ..... 123
A. 2 Gradient Descent ..... 124
A. 3 Lagrange Optimization ..... 125
References ..... 126
Solutions ..... 127
List of Symbols ..... 131
Index ..... 133

## Chapter 1 Introduction


#### Abstract

This book deals with models and algorithms for the analysis of data sets, for example industrial process data, business data, text and structured data, image data, and biomedical data. We define the terms data analytics, data mining, knowledge discovery, and the KDD and CRISP-DM processes. Typical data analysis projects can be divided into several phases: preparation, preprocessing, analysis, and postprocessing. The chapters of this book are structured according to the main methods of data preprocessing and data analysis: data and relations, data preprocessing, visualization, correlation, regression, forecasting, classification, and clustering.


### 1.1 It's All About Data

The focus of this book is the analysis of large data sets, for example:

- Industrial process data: An increasing amount of data is acquired, stored and processed in order to automate and control industrial production, manufacturing, distribution, logistics and supply chain processes. Data are used on all levels of the automation pyramid: sensors and actuators at the field level, control signals at the control level, operation and monitoring data at the execution level, schedules and indicators at the planning level. The main purpose of data analysis in industry is to optimize processes and to improve the competitive position of the company.
- Business data: Data of business performance are analyzed to better understand and drive business processes. Important business domains to be analyzed include customers, portfolio, sales, marketing, pricing, financials, risk, and fraud. An example is shopping basket analysis that finds out which products customers purchase at the same time. This analysis aims to improve cross selling and thus increases sales. Another example for business data analysis is customer segmentation for tailored advertising and sales promotions.
- Text and structured data: The analysis of numerical data has been the focus of mathematical statistics for centuries. Today, text and structured data also serve
as important information sources: text documents, electronic messages (like email), web documents, or web based data bases (the so-called deep web). The analysis of text and structured data helps to filter, search, extract, and structure information. Structured data (as opposed to unstructured text) uses particular organizational criteria such as record fields or object structures which are often enhanced by semantic and ontological models.
- Image data: An increasing number of image sensors ranging from smartphone cameras to satellite cameras provides large amounts of 2D and also 3D image data. Image data analysis finds and recognizes objects, analyzes and classifies scenes, and relates image data with other information sources.
- Biomedical data: Data from laboratory experiments are used to analyze, understand and exploit biological and medical processes, for example to analyze DNA sequences, to understand and annotate genome functions, to analyze gene and protein expressions or to model regulation networks.


### 1.2 Data Analytics, Data Mining, and Knowledge Discovery

The term data mining dates back to the 1980s [3]. The goal of data mining is to extract knowledge from data [1]. In this context, knowledge is defined as interesting patterns that are generally valid, novel, useful, and understandable to humans. Whether or not the extracted patterns are interesting depends on the particular application and needs to be verified by application experts. Based on expert feedback the knowledge extraction process is often interactively refined. The term data analytics became popular in the early 2000s [2, 6]. Data analytics is defined as the application of computer systems to the analysis of large data sets for the support of decisions. Data analytics is a very interdisciplinary field that has adopted aspects from many other scientific disciplines such as statistics, signal theory, pattern recognition, computational intelligence, machine learning, and operations research.

Typical data analysis projects can be divided into several phases. Data are assessed and selected, cleaned and filtered, visualized and analyzed, and the analysis results are finally interpreted and evaluated. The knowledge discovery in databases (KDD) process [1] comprises the six phases selection, preprocessing, transformation, data mining, interpretation, and evaluation. The cross industry standard process for data mining (CRISP-DM) [5] comprises the six phases business understanding, data understanding, data preparation, modeling, evaluation, and deployment. For simplicity we distinguish only four phases here: preparation, preprocessing, analysis, and postprocessing (Fig. 1.1). The main focus of this book is data preprocessing and data analysis. The chapters are structured according to the main methods of preprocessing and analysis: data and relations, data preprocessing, visualization, correlation, regression, forecasting, classification, and clustering.

This book gives a clear and concise overview of the most important methods and algorithms of data analysis. It enables the reader to gain a complete and compre-


Fig. 1.1 Phases of data analysis projects.
hensive understanding of data analysis, to apply data analysis methods to his or her own projects, and to contribute to the progress of the field.

A large number a software tools for data mining are available today. Popular commercial software tools include MATLAB, SPSS, SAS, and STATISTICA. Popular free and open-source software tools include R, Rapid Miner, and WEKA. This book does not present, compare, or recommend any data mining software tools. For a comprehensive overview of current data mining software tools please refer to [4].

## References

1. U. M. Fayyad, G. Piatetsky-Shapiro, P. Smyth, and R. Uthurusamy. Advances in Knowledge Discovery and Data Mining. AAAI Press, Menlo Park, 1996.
2. R. Kohavi, N. J. Rothleder, and E. Simoudis. Emerging trends in business analytics. Communications of the ACM, 45(8):345-48, 2002.
3. M. C. Lovell. Data mining. Review of Economics and Statistics, 65(1):1-11, 1983.
4. R. Mikut and M. Reischl. Data mining tools. Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Data Mining and Knowledge Discovery, 1(5):431-443, 2011.
5. C. Shearer. The CRISP-DM model: The new blueprint for data mining. J Data Warehousing, 5(4):13-22, 2000.
6. S. Tyagi. Using data analytics for greater profits. Journal of Business Strategy, 24(3):12-14, 2003.

## Chapter 2 <br> Data and Relations


#### Abstract

The popular Iris benchmark set is used to introduce the basic concepts of data analysis. Data scales (nominal, ordinal, interval, ratio) must be accounted for because certain mathematical operations are only appropriate for specific scales. Numerical data can be represented by sets, vectors, or matrices. Data analysis is often based on dissimilarity measures (like inner product norms, Lebesgue/Minkowski norms) or on similarity measures (like cosine, overlap, Dice, Jaccard, Tanimoto). Sequences can be analyzed using sequence relations (like Hamming, Levenshtein, edit distance). Data can be extracted from continuous signals by sampling and quantization. The Nyquist condition allows sampling without loss of information.


### 2.1 The Iris Data Set

To introduce the basic concepts of data analysis we consider one of the most popular historic benchmark data sets: the Iris data set [1]. The Iris data set was originally created in 1935 by the American botanist Edgar Anderson who examined the geographic distribution of Iris flowers on the Gaspé peninsula in Quebec (Canada). In 1936, Sir Ronald Aylmer Fisher used Anderson's Iris data set as an example for multivariate discriminant analysis [4] (see chapter 8). Subsequently, the Iris data set became one of the most frequently used reference data set in statistics and data analysis.

The Iris data set comprises measurements from 150 Iris flower samples: 50 from each of the three species Iris Setosa, Iris Virginica, and Iris Versicolor. For each of the 150 flowers, values of four numerical features chosen by Anderson were measured: the length and the width of sepal and petal leaves in centimeters. For illustration, Table 2.1 shows the complete Iris data set. Notice that several distinct replicates of the original Iris data set have been used and published, so in experiments with this data set the version should be carefully checked [2]. The Iris data set as well as many other popular data sets are available, for example, through the machine learning data base at the University of California at Irvine (UCI).

Table 2.1 The Iris data set (from [1])

| Setosa |  |  |  | Versicolor |  |  |  | Virginica |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| sepal |  | petal |  | sepal |  | petal |  | sepal |  | petal |  |
| length | width | length | width | length | width | length | width | length | width | length | width |
| 5.1 | 3.5 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 7 | 3.2 | 4.7 | 1.4 | 6.3 | 3.3 | 6 | 2.5 |
| 4.9 | 3 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 6.4 | 3.2 | 4.5 | 1.5 | 5.8 | 2.7 | 5.1 | 1.9 |
| 4.7 | 3.2 | 1.3 | 0.2 | 6.9 | 3.1 | 4.9 | 1.5 | 7.1 | 3 | 5.9 | 2.1 |
| 4.6 | 3.1 | 1.5 | 0.2 | 5.5 | 2.3 | 4 | 1.3 | 6.3 | 2.9 | 5.6 | 1.8 |
| 5 | 3.6 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 6.5 | 2.8 | 4.6 | 1.5 | 6.5 | 3 | 5.8 | 2.2 |
| 5.4 | 3.9 | 1.7 | 0.4 | 5.7 | 2.8 | 4.5 | 1.3 | 7.6 | 3 | 6.6 | 2.1 |
| 4.6 | 3.4 | 1.4 | 0.3 | 6.3 | 3.3 | 4.7 | 1.6 | 4.9 | 2.5 | 4.5 | 1.7 |
| 5 | 3.4 | 1.5 | 0.2 | 4.9 | 2.4 | 3.3 | 1 | 7.3 | 2.9 | 6.3 | 1.8 |
| 4.4 | 2.9 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 6.6 | 2.9 | 4.6 | 1.3 | 6.7 | 2.5 | 5.8 | 1.8 |
| 4.9 | 3.1 | 1.5 | 0.1 | 5.2 | 2.7 | 3.9 | 1.4 | 7.2 | 3.6 | 6.1 | 2.5 |
| 5.4 | 3.7 | 1.5 | 0.2 | 5 | 2 | 3.5 | 1 | 6.5 | 3.2 | 5.1 | 2 |
| 4.8 | 3.4 | 1.6 | 0.2 | 5.9 | 3 | 4.2 | 1.5 | 6.4 | 2.7 | 5.3 | 1.9 |
| 4.8 | 3 | 1.4 | 0.1 | 6 | 2.2 | 4 | 1 | 6.8 | 3 | 5.5 | 2.1 |
| 4.3 | 3 | 1.1 | 0.1 | 6.1 | 2.9 | 4.7 | 1.4 | 5.7 | 2.5 | 5 | 2 |
| 5.8 | 4 | 1.2 | 0.2 | 5.6 | 2.9 | 3.6 | 1.3 | 5.8 | 2.8 | 5.1 | 2.4 |
| 5.7 | 4.4 | 1.5 | 0.4 | 6.7 | 3.1 | 4.4 | 1.4 | 6.4 | 3.2 | 5.3 | 2.3 |
| 5.4 | 3.9 | 1.3 | 0.4 | 5.6 | 3 | 4.5 | 1.5 | 6.5 | 3 | 5.5 | 1.8 |
| 5.1 | 3.5 | 1.4 | 0.3 | 5.8 | 2.7 | 4.1 | 1 | 7.7 | 3.8 | 6.7 | 2.2 |
| 5.7 | 3.8 | 1.7 | 0.3 | 6.2 | 2.2 | 4.5 | 1.5 | 7.7 | 2.6 | 6.9 | 2.3 |
| 5.1 | 3.8 | 1.5 | 0.3 | 5.6 | 2.5 | 3.9 | 1.1 | 6 | 2.2 | 5 | 1.5 |
| 5.4 | 3.4 | 1.7 | 0.2 | 5.9 | 3.2 | 4.8 | 1.8 | 6.9 | 3.2 | 5.7 | 2.3 |
| 5.1 | 3.7 | 1.5 | 0.4 | 6.1 | 2.8 | 4 | 1.3 | 5.6 | 2.8 | 4.9 | 2 |
| 4.6 | 3.6 | 1 | 0.2 | 6.3 | 2.5 | 4.9 | 1.5 | 7.7 | 2.8 | 6.7 | 2 |
| 5.1 | 3.3 | 1.7 | 0.5 | 6.1 | 2.8 | 4.7 | 1.2 | 6.3 | 2.7 | 4.9 | 1.8 |
| 4.8 | 3.4 | 1.9 | 0.2 | 6.4 | 2.9 | 4.3 | 1.3 | 6.7 | 3.3 | 5.7 | 2.1 |
| 5 | 3 | 1.6 | 0.2 | 6.6 | 3 | 4.4 | 1.4 | 7.2 | 3.2 | 6 | 1.8 |
| 5 | 3.4 | 1.6 | 0.4 | 6.8 | 2.8 | 4.8 | 1.4 | 6.2 | 2.8 | 4.8 | 1.8 |
| 5.2 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 0.2 | 6.7 | 3 | 5 | 1.7 | 6.1 | 3 | 4.9 | 1.8 |
| 5.2 | 3.4 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 6 | 2.9 | 4.5 | 1.5 | 6.4 | 2.8 | 5.6 | 2.1 |
| 4.7 | 3.2 | 1.6 | 0.2 | 5.7 | 2.6 | 3.5 | 1 | 7.2 | 3 | 5.8 | 1.6 |
| 4.8 | 3.1 | 1.6 | 0.2 | 5.5 | 2.4 | 3.8 | 1.1 | 7.4 | 2.8 | 6.1 | 1.9 |
| 5.4 | 3.4 | 1.5 | 0.4 | 5.5 | 2.4 | 3.7 | 1 | 7.9 | 3.8 | 6.4 | 2 |
| 5.2 | 4.1 | 1.5 | 0.1 | 5.8 | 2.7 | 3.9 | 1.2 | 6.4 | 2.8 | 5.6 | 2.2 |
| 5.5 | 4.2 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 6 | 2.7 | 5.1 | 1.6 | 6.3 | 2.8 | 5.1 | 1.5 |
| 4.9 | 3.1 | 1.5 | 0.2 | 5.4 | 3 | 4.5 | 1.5 | 6.1 | 2.6 | 5.6 | 1.4 |
| 5 | 3.2 | 1.2 | 0.2 | 6 | 3.4 | 4.5 | 1.6 | 7.7 | 3 | 6.1 | 2.3 |
| 5.5 | 3.5 | 1.3 | 0.2 | 6.7 | 3.1 | 4.7 | 1.5 | 6.3 | 3.4 | 5.6 | 2.4 |
| 4.9 | 3.6 | 1.4 | 0.1 | 6.3 | 2.3 | 4.4 | 1.3 | 6.4 | 3.1 | 5.5 | 1.8 |
| 4.4 | 3 | 1.3 | 0.2 | 5.6 | 3 | 4.1 | 1.3 | 6 | 3 | 4.8 | 1.8 |
| 5.1 | 3.4 | 1.5 | 0.2 | 5.5 | 2.5 | 4 | 1.3 | 6.9 | 3.1 | 5.4 | 2.1 |
| 5 | 3.5 | 1.3 | 0.3 | 5.5 | 2.6 | 4.4 | 1.2 | 6.7 | 3.1 | 5.6 | 2.4 |
| 4.5 | 2.3 | 1.3 | 0.3 | 6.1 | 3 | 4.6 | 1.4 | 6.9 | 3.1 | 5.1 | 2.3 |
| 4.4 | 3.2 | 1.3 | 0.2 | 5.8 | 2.6 | 4 | 1.2 | 5.8 | 2.7 | 5.1 | 1.9 |
| 5 | 3.5 | 1.6 | 0.6 | 5 | 2.3 | 3.3 | 1 | 6.8 | 3.2 | 5.9 | 2.3 |
| 5.1 | 3.8 | 1.9 | 0.4 | 5.6 | 2.7 | 4.2 | 1.3 | 6.7 | 3.3 | 5.7 | 2.5 |
| 4.8 | 3 | 1.4 | 0.3 | 5.7 | 3 | 4.2 | 1.2 | 6.7 | 3 | 5.2 | 2.3 |
| 5.1 | 3.8 | 1.6 | 0.2 | 5.7 | 2.9 | 4.2 | 1.3 | 6.3 | 2.5 | 5 | 1.9 |
| 4.6 | 3.2 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 6.2 | 2.9 | 4.3 | 1.3 | 6.5 | 3 | 5.2 | 2 |
| 5.3 | 3.7 | 1.5 | 0.2 | 5.1 | 2.5 | 3 | 1.1 | 6.2 | 3.4 | 5.4 | 2.3 |
| 5 | 3.3 | 1.4 | 0.2 | 5.7 | 2.8 | 4.1 | 1.3 | 5.9 | 3 | 5.1 | 1.8 |

Table 2.2 Scales for numerical measurements.

| scale | operations example |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | statistics.

In data analysis we call each of the 150 Iris flowers an object, each of the three species a class, and each of the four dimensions a feature. Here is a list of typical questions that we try to answer by data analysis:

- Which of the data might contain errors or false class assignments?
- What is the error caused by rounding the data off to one decimal place?
- What is the correlation between petal length and petal width?
- Which pair of dimensions is correlated most?
- None of the flowers in the data set has a sepal width of 1.8 centimeters. Which sepal length would we expect for a flower that did have 1.8 cm as its sepal width?
- Which species would an Iris with a sepal width of 1.8 centimeters belong to?
- Do the three species contain sub-species that can be identified from the data?

In this book you will find numerous methods and algorithms to answer these and other data analysis questions. For a better understanding of these data analysis methods and algorithms we first define and examine the fundamental properties of data and their relations.

### 2.2 Data Scales

Numerical measurements may have different semantic meanings, even if they are represented by the same numerical data. Depending on the semantic meaning different types of mathematical operations are appropriate. For the semantic meaning of numerical measurement Stevens [7] suggested the four different scales that are shown in Table 2.2. For nominal scaled data (first row) only tests for equality or inequality are valid. Examples for nominal features are names of persons or codes of objects. Data of a nominal feature can be represented by the mode which is defined as the value that occurs most frequently. For ordinal scaled data (second row) the operations "greater than" and "less than" are valid. For each scale level the operations and statistics of the lower scale levels are also valid, so for the ordinal scale we have equality, inequality, and the combinations "greater than or equal" $(\geq)$ and "less than or equal" $(\leq)$. The relation "less than or equal" $(\leq)$ defines a total order, such that for any $x, y, z$ we have $(x \leq y) \wedge(y \leq x) \Rightarrow(x=y)$ (antisymmetry), $(x \leq y) \wedge(y \leq z) \Rightarrow(x \leq z)$ (transitivity), and $(x \leq y) \vee(y \leq x)$ (totality). Examples for ordinal features are school grades. Data of an ordinal feature can be represented by the median which is defined as the value for which (almost) as many smaller as

Table 2.3 Computation of the median petal width of the Iris data set.

| value |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.1 | 5 | 5 |
| 0.2 | 29 | 34 |
| 0.3 | 7 | 41 |
| 0.4 | 7 | 48 |
| 0.5 | 1 | 49 |
| 0.6 | 1 | 50 |
| 0.7 | 0 | 50 |
| 0.8 | 0 | 50 |
| 0.9 | 0 | 50 |
| 1 | 7 | 57 |
| 1.1 | 3 | 60 |
| 1.2 | 5 | 65 |
| 1.3 | $10(13)$ | 75 |


| value | frequency accumulated frequency |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2.5 | 3 | 3 |
| 2.4 | 3 | 6 |
| 2.3 | 8 | 14 |
| 2.2 | 3 | 17 |
| 2.1 | 6 | 23 |
| 2 | 6 | 29 |
| 1.9 | 5 | 34 |
| 1.8 | 12 | 46 |
| 1.7 | 2 | 48 |
| 1.6 | 4 | 52 |
| 1.5 | 12 | 64 |
| 1.4 | 8 | 72 |
| 1.3 | $3(13)$ | 75 |

larger values exist. The mean is not valid for ordinal features, so for example it does not make sense to say that the average school grade is C. For interval scaled data (third row) addition and subtraction are valid. Interval scaled features have arbitrary zero points. Examples are years in the Anno Domini dating system or temperatures in degrees Celcius (centigrade) or Fahrenheit, so for example it does not make sense to say that $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ is twice as high as $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Data of an interval scaled feature, for example, a set of values $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$, can be represented by the (arithmetic) mean

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{x}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_{k} \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For ratio scaled data (fourth row) multiplication and division are valid. Examples for ratio scaled features are time differences like ages or temperatures on the Kelvin scale. Data of an interval scaled feature can be represented by the generalized mean

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{\alpha}(X)=\sqrt[\alpha]{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_{k}^{\alpha}} \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the parameter $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, which includes the special cases minimum $(\alpha \rightarrow-\infty)$, harmonic mean $(\alpha=-1)$, geometric mean $(\alpha \rightarrow 0)$, arithmetic mean $(\alpha=1)$, quadratic mean $(\alpha=2)$, and maximum $(\alpha \rightarrow \infty)$.

The features of the Iris data set are on ratio scale. For example, we can approximately estimate the sepal surface area by multiplying the sepal length and the sepal width. Hence, we can compute the mode, median, mean and generalized mean of each of the features of the Iris data set. Table 2.3 illustrates this for the petal width (fourth feature). The Iris data set contains petal widths between 0.1 and 2.5 centimeters. The most frequent value of the petal width is 0.2 centimeters, which occurs 29 times, so the mode is 0.2 centimeters. To compute the median we can accumulate the numbers of occurences of the values for 0.1 centimeters, 0.2 centimeters, and so on, until we reach half of the number of objects (75). This algorithm yields a me-
dian petal width of 1.3 centimeters. The accumulation of the frequencies can also be done in reverse order (right view of Table 2.3). The complexity of this algorithm is $O(n \log n)$. Notice, however, and this is surprising even to many scientists, that the median can be efficiently computed in linear time using selection algorithms [3]. Finally, the mean petal width can be computed as about $\bar{x}^{(4)} \approx 1.19933$.

The majority of methods presented in this book use addition, subtraction, multiplication, or division of feature values and are therefore suitable only for interval and ratio scaled data. To analyze nominal and ordinal data we define relations between pairs of such data, that can be analyzed using specific relational methods.

### 2.3 Set and Matrix Representations

We denote numerical feature data as the set

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p} \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $n$ elements, where each element is a $p$-dimensional real-valued feature vector, where $n$ and $p$ are positive integers. For $p=1$ we call $X$ a scalar data set. As an alternative to the set representation, numerical feature data are also often represented as a matrix

$$
X=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
x_{1}^{(1)} & \cdots & x_{1}^{(p)}  \tag{2.4}\\
\vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
x_{n}^{(1)} & \cdots & x_{n}^{(p)}
\end{array}\right)
$$

so the vectors $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}$ are row vectors. Although it is a bit sloppy, data sets and data matrices are commonly used as equivalent data representations. Fig. 2.1 illustrates the common terms and notations of a data matrix. Each row of the data matrix corresponds to an element of the data set. It is called feature vector or data point $x_{k}, k=1, \ldots, n$. Each column of the data matrix corresponds to one component of all elements of the data set. It is called $i^{\text {th }}$ feature or $i^{\text {th }}$ component $x^{(i)}, i=1, \ldots, p$. In this book we distinguish rows and columns by using subscripts for rows and bracketed superscripts for columns. Alternative notations in the literature are $x(k,$. and $x(., i)$, for example. A single matrix element is a component of an element of the data set. It is called datum or value $x_{k}^{(i)}, k=1, \ldots, n, i=1, \ldots, p$.

The Iris data set can be written as a data matrix with 150 rows and 4 columns, where each row represents one object (flower) and each column represents one feature (dimension). The Iris data matrix can be obtained by vertical concatenation of the three portions shown in Table 2.1. The class information (Setosa, Versicolor, Virginica) can be interpreted as a fifth feature, on nominal scale.


Fig. 2.1 Matrix representation of a data set.

### 2.4 Relations

Consider a set of (abstract) elements, without referring to numerical feature vectors.

$$
\begin{equation*}
O=\left\{o_{1}, \ldots, o_{n}\right\} \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is often the case that there is no feature vector representation for the objects $o_{k}$, $k=1, \ldots, n$, so conventional feature-based data analysis methods are not applicable. Instead, the relation of all pairs of objects can often be quantified and written as a square matrix

$$
R=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
r_{11} & \cdots & r_{1 n}  \tag{2.6}\\
\vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
r_{n 1} & \cdots & r_{n n}
\end{array}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}
$$

Each relation value $r_{i j}, i, j=1, \ldots, n$, may refer to a degree of similarity, dissimilarity, compatibility, incompatibility, proximity or distance between the pair of objects $o_{i}$ and $o_{j} . R$ may be symmetric, so $r_{i j}=r_{j i}$ for all $i, j=1, \ldots, n . R$ may be manually defined or computed from features. If numerical features $X$ are available, then $R$ may be computed from $X$ using an appropriate function $f: \mathbb{R}^{p} \times \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. For example, a relational matrix for Iris may be manually defined by a botanist who optically compares and then numerically scores some relationship between pairs of flowers, or $R$ may be computed from sepal and petal lengths and widths. The most
important classes of relations, dissimilarities and similarities, are presented in the following two sections.

### 2.5 Dissimilarity Measures

A function $d$ is called dissimilarity or distance measure if for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$

$$
\begin{align*}
d(x, y) & =d(y, x)  \tag{2.7}\\
d(x, y) & =0 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x=y  \tag{2.8}\\
d(x, z) & \leq d(x, y)+d(y, z) \tag{2.9}
\end{align*}
$$

From these axioms follows

$$
\begin{equation*}
d(x, y) \geq 0 \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

A class of dissimilarity measures is defined using a norm $\|$.$\| of x-y$, so

$$
\begin{equation*}
d(x, y)=\|x-y\| \tag{2.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

A function $\|\cdot\|: \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{+}$is a norm if and only if

$$
\begin{align*}
\|x\|=0 & \Leftrightarrow x=(0, \ldots, 0)  \tag{2.12}\\
\|a \cdot x\| & =|a| \cdot\|x\| \quad \forall a \in \mathbb{R}, x \in \mathbb{R}^{p}  \tag{2.13}\\
\|x+y\| & \leq\|x\|+\|y\| \quad \forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^{p} \tag{2.14}
\end{align*}
$$

For example, the frequently used so-called hyperbolic norm

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x\|_{h}=\prod_{i=1}^{p} x^{(i)} \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

is not a norm according to the previous definition, since condition (2.12) is violated by $x=(0,1) \neq(0,0)$ with $\|x\|_{h}=\|(0,1)\|_{h}=0$, or condition (2.13) is violated by $x=(1,1)$ and $a=2$, where $\|a \cdot x\|_{h}=\|2 \cdot(1,1)\|_{h}=\|(2,2)\|_{h}=4 \neq|a| \cdot\|x\|_{h}=$ $|2| \cdot\|(1,1)\|_{h}=2$.

Frequently used classes of norms are inner product norms and Lebesgue or Minkowski norms. The inner product norm is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x\|_{A}=\sqrt{x A x^{T}} \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a norm inducing matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$. Important special cases of the inner product norm are the Euclidean norm

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 0 & \cdots & 0  \tag{2.17}\\
0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

the Frobenius or Hilbert-Schmidt norm

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 1 & \cdots & 1  \tag{2.18}\\
1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
1 & 1 & \cdots & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

the diagonal norm with individual weights for each feature

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
d_{1} & 0 & \cdots & 0  \tag{2.19}\\
0 & d_{2} & \cdots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & d_{p}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and the Mahalanobis norm

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\operatorname{cov}^{-1} X=\left(\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right)^{T}\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right)\right)^{-1} \tag{2.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Mahalanobis norm uses the inverse of the covariance matrix of the data set $X$ (see chapter 5). It adapts the weighting of the individual features based on the observed statistics and also accounts for correlations between pairs of features.

The Lebesgue or Minkowski norm is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x\|_{\alpha}=\sqrt[\alpha]{\sum_{j=1}^{p}\left|x^{(j)}\right|^{\alpha}} \tag{2.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is equal to the generalized mean at (2.2) except for a constant factor $\sqrt[\alpha]{n}$. Important special cases of the Lebesgue or Minkowski norm are the infimum norm ( $\alpha \rightarrow-\infty$ )

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x\|_{-\infty}=\min _{j=1, \ldots, p} x^{(j)} \tag{2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

the Manhattan or city block distance $(\alpha=1)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x\|_{1}=\sum_{j=1}^{p}\left|x^{(j)}\right| \tag{2.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

the Euclidean norm ( $\alpha=2$ ), which is the unique point in the intersection of the inner product and Minkowski families,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x\|_{2}=\sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^{p}\left(x^{(j)}\right)^{2}} \tag{2.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the supremum norm $(\alpha \rightarrow \infty)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x\|_{\infty}=\max _{j=1, \ldots, p} x^{(j)} \tag{2.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Another frequently used dissimilarity measure is the Hamming distance [5] defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
d_{H}(x, y)=\sum_{i=1}^{p} \rho\left(x^{(i)}, y^{(i)}\right) \tag{2.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the discrete metric

$$
\rho(x, y)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } x=y  \tag{2.27}\\ 1 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

So the Hamming distance yields the number of feature values that do not match. For binary features, the Hamming distance is equal to the Manhattan or city block distance (2.23), $d_{H}(x, y)=\|x-y\|_{1}$. Notice, however, that the Hamming distance is not a norm because condition (2.13) does not hold. Variants of the Hamming distance use modified functions $\rho$ to specify similarities between individual features. For example, if the features are (nominal scale) components of a machine, then $\rho$ might be lower for pairs of similar components and higher for pairs of rather dissimilar components.

### 2.6 Similarity Measures

A function $s$ is called similarity or proximity measure if for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$

$$
\begin{align*}
& s(x, y)=s(y, x)  \tag{2.28}\\
& s(x, y) \leq s(x, x)  \tag{2.29}\\
& s(x, z) \leq s(x, y)+s(y, z)  \tag{2.30}\\
& s(x, y) \geq 0 \tag{2.31}
\end{align*}
$$

The function $s$ is called normalized similarity measure if additionally

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x, x)=1 \tag{2.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any dissimilarity measure $d$ can be used to define a corresponding similarity measure $s$ and vice versa, for example using a monotonically decreasing positive function $f$ with $f(0)=1$ such as

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x, y)=\frac{1}{1+d(x, y)} \tag{2.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, the examples presented in the previous section are mostly used in their dissimilarity version, and the examples presented in this section are mostly used in their similarity version. Let us first consider similarities between binary feature vectors. A pair of binary feature vectors can be considered similar if many ones coincide. This conjunction can be represented by the product, so the scalar product of the feature vectors is a reasonable candidate for a similarity measure. Also for real-valued features similarity measures can be defined based on scalar products that may be normalized in different ways:

- cosine

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x, y)=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{p} x^{(i)} y^{(i)}}{\sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(x^{(i)}\right)^{2} \sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(y^{(i)}\right)^{2}}} \tag{2.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

- overlap

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x, y)=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{p} x^{(i)} y^{(i)}}{\min \left(\sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(x^{(i)}\right)^{2}, \sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(y^{(i)}\right)^{2}\right)} \tag{2.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Dice

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x, y)=\frac{2 \sum_{i=1}^{p} x^{(i)} y^{(i)}}{\sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(x^{(i)}\right)^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(y^{(i)}\right)^{2}} \tag{2.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Jaccard (or sometimes called Tanimoto)

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x, y)=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{p} x^{(i)} y^{(i)}}{\sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(x^{(i)}\right)^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{p}\left(y^{(i)}\right)^{2}-\sum_{i=1}^{p} x^{(i)} y^{(i)}} \tag{2.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

These expressions are undefined for zero feature vectors because the denominators are zero then, so the similarity has to be explicitly defined for this case, for example as zero. Notice that the cosine similarity is invariant against (positive) scaling of the feature vectors and therefore considers the relative distribution of the features,

$$
\begin{align*}
& s(c \cdot x, y)=s(x, y)  \tag{2.38}\\
& s(x, c \cdot y)=s(x, y) \tag{2.39}
\end{align*}
$$

for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$ and $c>0$. Consider for example two cake recipes, one with 3 eggs, $11 / 2$ cups sugar, $11 / 2$ cups flour, $1 / 2$ cup butter, and the other one with 6 eggs, 3 cups sugar, 3 cups flour, and 1 cup butter. Obviously, both recipes yield the same cake, but the second one yields twice as much cake as the first one. Following the intuitive expectation the cosine similarity between the two recipes is equal to one.

In this section we discussed functions to quantify the similarity between feature vectors (rows of the data matrix). In chapter 5 we will discuss functions to quantify the similarity between features (columns of the data matrix), the so-called correlation. If the data matrix is transposed (the rows and columns are exchanged), then the correlation can also be used as an alternative way to quantify the similarity between feature vectors.

### 2.7 Sequence Relations

The dissimilarity and similarity measures presented in the previous two sections apply to feature vectors whose elements refer to different features. In this section we consider sequences of feature values or feature vectors, for example sequences of daily temperature values at different locations, text documents viewed as sequences of alphanumerical characters, or sequences of web pages visited by different users. Formally, such sequences could be viewed as feature vectors, but it is more appropriate to explicitly consider the sequential character, the fact that each element of the sequence refers to the same feature, and to be able to compare sequences of different lengths.

We use a function $\rho$ to compare individual pairs of sequence elements. An example is the discrete inequality function (2.27) that is used in the Hamming distance (2.26). The Hamming distance may be used as a sequence relation, but only for sequences of the same length. To compute the relation between sequences of different lengths, neutral elements like zeros or space characters might be appended to the shorter sequence. Depending on the alignment of the subsequences lower Hamming distances might be achieved by prepending or even optimally inserting neutral elements. This is the idea of the Levenshtein or edit distance [6] that determines the minimum number of edit operations (insert, delete, or change a sequence element) necessary to transform one sequence into the other. We denote $L_{i j}(x, y)$ as the edit distance between the first $i$ elements of $x$ and the first $j$ elements of $y$, and recursively define the edit distance as

$$
L_{i j}= \begin{cases}i & j=0  \tag{2.40}\\ j & i=0 \\ \min \left\{L_{i-1, j}+1, L_{i, j-1}+1, L_{i-1, j-1}+\rho\left(x^{(i)}, y^{(j)}\right)\right\} & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

The first two cases consider empty sequences and terminate the recursion. In the third case, the three arguments of the minimum operator correspond to the three edit operations insert, delete, and change. To compute $L_{i j}$ we have to compute all $L_{s t}, s=1, \ldots, i, t=1, \ldots, j$. A direct implementation of the recursive definition of the edit distance is inefficient because it computes many values of $L_{s t}$ multiple times. Fig. 2.2 shows an efficient iterative implementation of the edit distance that computes each $L_{s t}$ only once. This algorithm first initializes the distances of the empty sequences $L_{s 0}=s, s=1, \ldots, i$, and $L_{0 t}=t, t=1, \ldots, j$, and then iteratively computes new distance values $L_{s t}$ from the already computed distances $L_{s-1 t}, L_{s t-1}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { for } s=1, \ldots, i \\
& \quad L_{s 0}=s \\
& \text { for } t=1, \ldots, j \\
& \quad L_{0 t}=t \\
& \text { for } s=1, \ldots, i \\
& \begin{array}{r}
\text { for } t=1, \ldots, j \\
\quad L_{s t}=\min \left\{L_{s-1 t} \quad+1,\right. \\
\qquad \\
\qquad L_{s t-1} \quad+1, \\
\\
\left.\quad L_{s-1 t-1}+\rho\left(x^{(s)}, y^{(t)}\right)\right\}
\end{array}
\end{aligned}
$$

Fig. 2.2 An iterative algorithm to computer the edit distance $L_{i j}$.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | A T |  |  | A |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 12 |  | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 67 | 7 |  | 9 |  |
|  |  |  | 0 |  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 56 | 6 | 7 | 8 |  |
|  |  |  | 11 |  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 45 | 5 | 6 |  |  |
|  |  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 45 | 5 | 6 | 7 |  |
|  |  |  | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 45 | 5 | 6 | 7 |  |
|  |  | - | 4 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 34 | 4 | 5 | 6 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 44 | 4 |  | 5 |  |

Fig. 2.3 Edit distance matrix for the sequences CAESAR and CLEOPATRA.

| C | A | E | S |  | A | R |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| C | L | E | O | P | A | T | R | A |$\Rightarrow 5$

Fig. 2.4 Edit operations to convert the sequence CAESAR into the sequence CLEOPATRA.
and $L_{s-1 t-1}$. The algorithm in Fig. 2.2 computes $L$ column by column. Instead, $L$ can also be computed row by row or in a diagonal scheme.

Fig. 2.3 shows the edit distance matrix $L$ for the alphanumerical character sequences CAESAR and CLEOPATRA. Each matrix element is computed as the minimum of its top neighbor plus one, left neighbor plus one, and top left diagonal neighbor plus the corresponding character distance. The resulting edit distance between both sequences in the bottom right value, in this case 5 . This means, that we need at least five edit operations to convert the sequence CAESAR into the sequence CLEOPATRA and vice versa. Fig. 2.4 shows five such edit operations: change character 2 , change character 4 , insert character 5 , insert character 7 , and insert character 9.


Fig. 2.5 Continuous signal and sampled time series.

### 2.8 Sampling and Quantization

In the previous section we have considered finite discrete sequences of features or feature vectors. In many cases such a sequence is obtained by sampling a continuous signal $x(t)$ with a fixed sampling period $T$, for example by measuring the room temperature every ten minutes, so we obtain the time series

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}=x(k \cdot T), \quad k=1, \ldots, n \tag{2.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fig. 2.5 shows an example of such a signal and the corresponding sampled time series (vertical bars starting at zero). The time series contains only individual samples of the continuous signal, but it does not contain any information about the infinitely many points of the signal between any pair of adjacent samples, so it covers only a part of the information contained in the signal. Increasing the sampling period will decrease the information of the time series until the time series will not provide any valuable information about the time series any more. Decreasing the sampling period will lead to a more accurate match between the time series and the signal, but it will also increase the required amount of memory to store the samples. To find a good compromise between these extremes we want to find the largest possible sampling period for which the time series contains all relevant information about the time series.

Any finite continuous signal can be represented as a sum of periodic signals with different frequencies (see chapter 4). A signal $x(t)$ is called band limited if the maximum frequency $f_{\text {max }}$ is finite, so the Fourier spectrum is $|x(j 2 \pi f)|=0$ for $|f|>$ $f_{\text {max }}$. If this signal is sampled with a sampling period less than $T_{s}=1 /\left(2 \cdot f_{\max }\right)$, or equivalently a sampling frequency larger than $f_{s}=2 \cdot f_{\text {max }}$, then the original signal can be completely reconstructed from the (infinite) time series. This is called Shannon's sampling theorem. The condition $T \leq T_{s}$ (or $f \geq f_{s}$ ) is called the Nyquist condition. Fig. 2.6 shows three time series obtained from the original signal at the left view of Fig. 2.5 using three different sampling periods. The left time series is sampled with $T<1 /\left(2 \cdot f_{\max }\right)$, so the Nyquist condition holds, and the piecewise linear reconstruction of the signal matches well the original signal. The middle time


Fig. 2.6 Sampled time series for different sampling periods and reconstructed signals.
series is sampled with $T=1 /\left(2 \cdot f_{\max }\right)$, so it is at the edge of the Nyquist condition, and the reconstruction still matches the original signal. Notice however, that the match would be worse if the sampling times were delayed (a so-called phase shift). For a delay of $T / 2$ the samples would be all zero for this example, yielding zero information about the original signal. The sampling period should therefore be chosen well below the Nyquist condition. Finally, the right time series is sampled with $T>1 /\left(2 \cdot f_{\max }\right)$, so the Nyquist condition does not hold, and the reconstructed signal is very different from the original signal.

In many data analysis projects only sampled data and not the original signals are available. Given only the sampled data, it is not possible to find out whether or not sampling was done according to the Nyquist condition. Therefore, it is often useful to discuss this issue with the data providers.

The first part of this section considered discretization in time, called sampling. Now we consider the discretization of the data values, called quantization. Quantization applies to analog values that are digitized with finite precision as well as digital values whose precision is reduced in order to save memory or to speed up data transmission. Quantization matches the continuous interval $\left[x_{\text {min }}, x_{\text {max }}\right]$ to the set of discrete values $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{q}\right\}$, where $q$ is the number of quantization levels. Do not confuse the quantization levels $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{q}$ with the time series or the feature values for different objects. Each quantized value can be represented as a $b=\left\lceil\log _{2} q\right\rceil$ bit binary number, for example. Each continuous value $x \in\left[x_{\min }, x_{\max }\right]$ can be translated to a quantized value $x_{k} \in\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{q}\right\}$ or an index $k \in\{1, \ldots, q\}$ by rounding.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\frac{x_{k-1}+x_{k}}{2}-x_{1}}{x_{q}-x_{1}} \leq \frac{x-x_{\min }}{x_{\max }-x_{\min }}<\frac{\frac{x_{k}+x_{k+1}}{2}-x_{1}}{x_{q}-x_{1}} \tag{2.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

The quantization process causes a quantization error. The left view of Fig. 2.7 shows the quantization of the signal from the left view of Fig. 2.5 for $q=11$ equidistant quantization levels $\{-1,-0.8, \ldots, 1\}$. The quantization levels appear as horizontal lines (stairs) in the curve. The right view of Fig. 2.7 shows the quantization error $e(t)=x(t)-x_{q}(t)$. In this case the quantization levels are equidistant, $x_{i}=x_{1}+$


Fig. 2.7 Quantized data and quantization error.
$(i-1) \cdot \Delta x, i=1, \ldots, q, \Delta x=\left(x_{q}-x_{1}\right) /(q-1)$, so the quantization error is in the interval $e(t) \in[-\Delta x / 2, \Delta x / 2)$. Therefore, quantization causes an additive error with the maximum absolute value $|e| \leq \Delta x / 2$. To keep the quantization error low, the quantization levels should be close, i.e. $\Delta x$ should be small or $q$ should be large.

A binary number with $b$ bits can represent integers between $x_{1}=0$ and $x_{q}=$ $2^{b}-1$. The relative quantization error can then be estimated as $\left|e /\left(x_{q}-x_{1}\right)\right| \leq$ $100 \% / 2 /\left(2^{b}-1\right) \approx 100 \% / 2^{b+1}$. For conventional values of $b \geq 8$ this quantization error can often be practically ignored, if the limits $x_{\min }$ and $x_{\max }$ are chosen appropriately. If the range $x_{\max }-x_{\min }$ is much higher than the actual variation of the data, then the quantized data might appear constant or possibly exhibit sudden jumps caused by the borders of the quantization levels. For example, if the room temperature in degrees Celsius is represented with 8 bits and $\left[x_{\min }, x_{\text {max }}\right]=\left[0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 1000^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right]$, then temperatures between about $13.72^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and $17.65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ correspond to the quantization level 4 , and temperatures between about $17.65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and $21.57^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ correspond to the quantization level 5 . Normal room temperature will therefore yield only the values 4 or 5, and the only information contained in the quantized data is whether or not the temperature threshold of $17.65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ is exceeded.

## Problems

2.1. A cake recipe says "bake the cake at $\mathbf{3 5 0}$ degrees Farenheit for $\mathbf{4 5}$ minutes". What are the scales of the bold data?
2.2. What are the values of the suitable statistics for $X=\{1,2,3,4,4\}$, if the data are (a) nominal, (b) ordinal, (c) interval scaled?
2.3. Compute the (a) Euclidean, (b) city block, (c) Hamming, and (d) edit distance between $(0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1)$ and ( $1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0)$.
2.4. Which of the following functions are similarity or dissimilarity measures?

$$
\begin{align*}
& f(x, y)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } x=y \\
0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}  \tag{2.43}\\
& f(x, y)=\frac{x \cdot y^{T}}{\sqrt{x \cdot x^{T} \cdot y \cdot y^{T}}}  \tag{2.44}\\
& f(x, y)=\tanh \left((x-y) \cdot(x-y)^{T}\right)  \tag{2.45}\\
& f(x, y)=\cos \left((x-y) \cdot(x-y)^{T}\right) \tag{2.46}
\end{align*}
$$

## References

1. E. Anderson. The Irises of the Gaspe Peninsula. Bull. of the American Iris Society, 59:2-5, 1935.
2. J. C. Bezdek, J. M. Keller, R. Krishnapuram, L. I. Kuncheva, and N. R. Pal. Will the real iris data please stand up? IEEE Transactions on Fuzzy Systems, 7(3):368-369, 1999.
3. M. Blum, R. W. Floyd, V. Pratt, R. Rivest, and R. Tarjan. Time bounds for selection. Journal of Computer and System Sciences, 7:488-461, 1973.
4. R. A. Fisher. The use of multiple measurements in taxonomic problems. Annals of Eugenics, 7:179-188, 1936.
5. R. W. Hamming. Error detecting and error correcting codes. The Bell System Technical Journal, 26(2):147-160, April 1950.
6. V. I. Levenshtein. Binary codes capable of correcting deletions, insertions and reversals. Soviet Physics Doklady, 10(8):707-710, 1966.
7. S. S. Stevens. On the theory of scales of measurement. Science, 103(2684):677-680, 1946.

## Chapter 3 <br> Data Preprocessing


#### Abstract

In almost all real applications, data contain errors and noise, need to be scaled and transformed, or need to be collected from different and possibly heterogeneous information sources. We distinguish deterministic and stochastic errors. Deterministic errors can sometimes be easily corrected. Outliers need to be identified and removed or corrected. Outliers or noise can be reduced by filtering. We distinguish many different filtering methods with different effectiveness and computational complexities: moving statistical measures, discrete linear filters, finite impule response, infinite impulse response. Data features with different ranges often need to be standardized or transformed.


### 3.1 Error Types

Data often contain errors that may cause incorrect data analysis results. We distinguish stochastic and deterministic errors. Examples for stochastic errors are measurement or transmission errors, which can be modeled by additive noise. The left view of Fig. 3.1 shows again the data set from the right view of Fig. 2.5. To mimic a corresponding data set containing stochastic errors we generate Gaussian noise data using a random generator that produces data following a Gaussian distribution with mean zero and standard deviation 0.1 , a so-called $N(0,0.1)$ distribution. The middle and right views of Fig. 3.1 show the Gaussian noise data and the data obtained by adding the noise to the original data, respectively. The original (left) and noisy (right) data look very similar, and in fact low noise has often only little impact on data analysis results.

Another type of problematic data are outliers, which are defined as individual data with large deviations from normal. Outliers may be caused by stochastic or deterministic effects, for example by extreme individual measurement errors, or by packet losses in data transmission. In manual data assessment outliers may be caused when individual data are stored in the wrong data fields, by typos, especially when the decimal point is put at the wrong position. Decimal point errors may also


Fig. 3.1 Original data, Gaussian noise, and noisy data.


Fig. 3.2 Original data, outliers, and drift.
be caused by a deterministic effect, for example when data are exchanged between systems using different meanings for the . and , characters, so 1.234 might be transformed to 1,234 , which may refer to $1.234 \cdot 10^{0}$ and $1.234 \cdot 10^{3}$, depending on country specific notation, and therefore differ by a factor of 1000 .

Other types of deterministic errors include the use of wrong formulas for the computation of derived data, or measurement errors caused by wrong calibration, wrong scaling, or sensor drift. Data with such deterministic errors can be corrected, if the error systematic is known.

Fig. 3.2 shows the data set from above again (left), the same data with two outliers (middle), and distorted by a drift effect (right). It is not easy to see the two outliers in the middle view of Fig. 3.2 (marked with little arrows), but they may have a big impact on the data analysis results, so outlier handling is an important issue in data preprocessing. Unlike the outliers in this example, sometimes outliers can be detected, because they significantly deviate from the global distribution of all the other data. Such severe outliers can be identified, for example, by the 2 -sigma rule that classifies a data vector $x_{k} \in X$ as outlier if at least one feature deviates from the (feature) mean by at least twice the (feature) standard deviation (sigma).

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k} \in X \text { is outlier } \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \exists i \in\{1, \ldots, p\} \cdot\left|\frac{x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}}{s_{x}^{(i)}}\right|>2 \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\bar{x}^{(i)}$ denotes the mean (2.1) and $s_{x}^{(i)}$ denotes the standard deviation of the $i^{t h}$ feature.

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{x}^{(i)}=\sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)^{2}}=\sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}\right)^{2}-n\left(\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)^{2}\right)} \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

More generally, $m$-sigma rules with arbitrary values of $m$ can be defined accordingly.
We already mentioned above that the outliers in the middle view of Fig. 3.2 can not be identified by the 2 -sigma rule, because they are local outliers inside the global data distribution. Such data are called inliers. In time series, inliers can be better detected by approaches that consider the differential change of subsequent values. An alternative is the use of filtering methods that not only detect outliers but also mitigate them.

Outlier handling should be used with caution, because sometimes data contain unusual but correct data that contain valuable information and should therefore not be removed. For example, if a production plant produces a product with an unusually high or low quality, then the corresponding production data might be removed as outliers, although they might be highly important to identify the influence of specific production parameters on the product quality. Another example for true anomalies are earthquake events in seismographic records. To distinguish such exotic but valuable data from erroneous data it is often necessary to consult with domain experts.

Invalid data can be detected when their feature values are outside the admissible range. Such outliers can be identified by comparison with feature limits $x_{\min }^{(i)}$ and $x_{\max }^{(i)}, i=1, \ldots, p$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k} \in X \text { is invalid } \Leftrightarrow \exists i \in\{1, \ldots, p\} \cdot\left(x_{k}^{(i)}<x_{\min }^{(i)}\right) \vee\left(x_{k}^{(i)}>x_{\max }^{(i)}\right) \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The feature limits may be defined by the sign (price, weight, time), the sensor range, the time interval of considered data, or the range of physically meaningful values.

Constant data features may be erroneous or correct.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(i)}=x_{l}^{(i)} \quad \forall k, l=1, \ldots, n \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Such constant features do not contain useful information, but they may cause problems with some data analysis methods and should therefore be removed from the data set.

### 3.2 Error Handling

If outliers, invalid, or missing data are identified, these can be handled in various ways:

1. invalidity list: the data stay unchanged, but the indices of the invalid data are stored in a separate list that is checked in each data processing step.
2. invalidity value: the outlier datum $x_{k}^{(i)}$ is replaced by a specific invalidity value $x_{k}^{(i)}=$ NaN, where NaN stands for not a number. In the 64 bit IEEE floating number format NaN is defined as $\$ 7$ FFFFFFF.
3. Correction or estimation of $x_{k}^{(i)}$ : Only individual features of individual vectors are corrected (if invalid) or estimated (if missing). This can be done in various ways:
a. replacing invalid data by the mean, median, minimum, or maximum of the valid feature data $x^{i}$.
b. nearest neighbor correction: Set $x_{k}^{(i)}=x_{j}^{(i)}$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|x_{j}-x_{k}\right\|_{\neg i}=\min _{l \in\{1, \ldots,, n\}}\left\|x_{l}-x_{k}\right\|_{\neg i} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\|\cdot\|_{\neg i}$ ignores feature $i$ and invalid or missing data.
c. linear interpolation for equidistant time series

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(i)}=\frac{x_{k-1}^{(i)}+x_{k+1}^{(i)}}{2} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

d. linear interpolation for non-equidistant time series

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(i)}=\frac{x_{k-1}^{(i)} \cdot\left(t_{k+1}-t_{k}\right)+x_{k+1}^{(i)} \cdot\left(t_{k}-t_{k-1}\right)}{t_{k+1}-t_{k-1}} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

e. nonlinear interpolation, for example using splines [1]
f. filtering (see below)
g. model-based estimation by regression (see chapter 6)
4. outlier removal: the complete vector $x_{k}$ is removed

The choice of a method depends on the number of available data and on the relative percentage of the outliers. If only a few data are available, and assessment of additional data is difficult or even impossible, then it is often worth the effort to estimate missing data and to correct invalid data. If sufficient data are available and data quality is important, then suspicious data should be completely removed.


Fig. 3.3 Some important filtering methods for series data.

### 3.3 Filtering

Using the methods discussed in the previous section outliers are removed by changing only individual data. The filtering methods presented in this section specifically consider series data, and they typically change all values of the series. The goal is not only to remove outliers but also to remove noise. Fig. 3.3 shows a categorization of the different filter types presented here.

A widely used class of filters uses statistical measures over moving windows. To compute the filtering result for each value $x_{k}, k=1, \ldots, n$, all series values in a local window around $x_{k}$ are considered and the filter output $y_{k}$ is the value of a statistical measure of the data in this window. Symmetric windows of the odd order $q \in\{3,5,7, \ldots\}$ consider the window $w_{k q}=\left\{x_{k-\frac{q-1}{2}}, \ldots, x_{k+\frac{q-1}{2}}\right\}$ which contains $x_{k}$, the $(q-1) / 2$ previous values and the $(q-1) / 2$ following values. Symmetric windows are only suitable for offline filtering when the future values of the series are already known. Asymmetric windows of the order $q \in\{2,3,4, \ldots\}$ consider the window $w_{k q}=\left\{x_{k-q+1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right\}$ which contains $x_{k}$ and the $q-1$ previous values. Asymmetric windows are also suitable for online filtering and are able to provide each filter output $y_{k}$ as soon as $x_{k}$ is known.

The mean value is often used as the statistical measure for the data in the window. This yields the symmetric (3.8) and asymmetric (3.9) moving mean or moving average of the order $q$ defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=\frac{1}{q} \sum_{i=k-\frac{q-1}{2}}^{k+\frac{q-1}{2}} x_{i} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$



Fig. 3.4 Original data and moving mean filtered data, $q=21$ and $q=201$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=\frac{1}{q} \sum_{i=k-q+1}^{k} x_{i} \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The left view of Fig. 3.4 shows a time series $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ generated from cosine data with additive noise and one strong outlier. The middle and right views of Fig. 3.4 show the output of asymmetric moving means for $q=21$ (middle) and $q=201$ (right). In both filtered time series the noise is substantially reduced. For $q=201$ the noise is almost completely eliminated. The amplitude of the outlier is reduced from 2 to about $0.5(q=21)$ and $0.1(q=201)$. Better filter effects can be achieved by larger values of the window size $q$, but $q-1$ data points are lost by filtering, so the window size should be much smaller than the length of the time series to be filtered, $q \ll n$.

In the previous chapter we discussed the median as a statistical measure for ordinal, interval, and ratio scaled data. Using the median as the statistical measure over symmetric or asymmetric moving windows yields the symmetric and asymmetric moving median or median filter of the order $q$ defined as $m_{k q} \in w_{k q}=$ $\left\{x_{k-\frac{q-1}{2}}, \ldots, x_{k+\frac{q-1}{2}}\right\}$ or $w_{k q}=\left\{x_{k-q+1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right\}$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\left\{x_{i} \in w_{k q} \mid x_{i}<m_{k q}\right\}\right|=\left|\left\{x_{i} \in w_{k q} \mid x_{i}>m_{k q}\right\}\right| \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where |.| denotes the set cardinality. Fig. 3.5 shows the same situation as in Fig. 3.4, but with the moving median instead of the moving mean. For the same window size, the moving mean and the moving median achieve similar degrees of noise reduction, but the moving median achieves a much better suppression of the outlier.

The third family of filtering methods presented here is the exponential filter. The exponential filter works best with slow changes of the filtered data, so each value of the filter output $y_{k}$ is similar to the previous value of the filter output $y_{k-1}$, except for a correction term that is computed as a fraction $\eta \in[0,1]$ of the previous filter error $x_{k-1}-y_{k-1}$. So, the exponential filter is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=y_{k-1}+\eta \cdot\left(x_{k-1}-y_{k-1}\right), \quad k=1, \ldots, n-1 \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$



Fig. 3.5 Original data and moving median filtered data, $q=21$ and $q=201$.


Fig. 3.6 Original data and exponentially filtered data, $\eta=0.1,0.01$, and 0.001 .
with an initial filter output $y_{0}=0$. The current filter output $y_{k}$ is affected by each past filter output $y_{k-i}, i=1, \ldots, k-1$, with the multiplier $(1-\eta)^{i}$, so the filter exponentially forgets previous filter outputs, hence the name exponential filter. For $\eta=0$ the exponential filter simply maintains the initial value $y_{k}=y_{0}=0$. For $\eta=1$ it simply repeats the previous filter input, $y_{k}=x_{k-1}$. Fig. 3.6 shows the output of the exponential filter for the example data set in Figs. 3.4 and 3.5, with the parameters $\eta=0.1,0.01$, and 0.001 . The higher the value of $\eta$, the higher the noise reduction. The outlier suppression is much weaker than with the median filter. Notice the lag for smaller values of $\eta$. For $\eta=0.001$ the filter output is not able to follow the amplitude of the original data any more. So, for the exponential filter the parameter $\eta$ has to be chosen carefully. It has to be small enough to achieve a sufficient filter effect but large enough to maintain the essential characteristics of the original data.

The moving mean and the exponential filter are special cases of the more general family of discrete linear filters. An asymmetric discrete linear filter of the order $q=1,2, \ldots$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=0}^{q-1} a_{i} \cdot y_{k-i}=\sum_{i=0}^{q-1} b_{i} \cdot x_{k-i} \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$



Fig. 3.7 Data flow graph of an FIR filter.


Fig. 3.8 Data flow graph of an IIR filter.
with the filter coefficients $a_{0}, \ldots, a_{q-1}, b_{0}, \ldots, b_{q-1} \in \mathbb{R}$ [3]. The output of an asymmetric discrete linear filter can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=\sum_{i=0}^{q-1} \frac{b_{i}}{a_{0}} \cdot x_{k-i}-\sum_{i=1}^{q-1} \frac{a_{i}}{a_{0}} \cdot y_{k-i} \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

For simplicity we consider only the asymmetric case here. The reader may easily modify the indices to obtain the equations for the symmetric discrete linear filter. The properties of a discrete linear filter are specified by the coefficient vectors $a=$ $\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{q-1}\right)$ and $b=\left(b_{0}, \ldots, b_{q-1}\right)$, where $a_{0} \neq 0$. If $a_{1}=\ldots=a_{q-1}=0$, then the filter output $y_{k}$ only depends on the inputs $x_{k-q+1}, \ldots, x_{k}$, and is independent of the previous outputs $y_{k-q+1}, \ldots, y_{k-1}$, so a change in the input $x_{k}$ affects only the current output $y_{k}$ and the following outputs $y_{k+1}, \ldots, y_{k+q-1}$, and is then completely forgotten. For $a_{1}=\ldots=a_{q-1}=0$, a discrete linear filter is therefore called a finite impulse response (FIR) filter. Otherwise, we call the discrete linear filter an infinite impulse response (IIR) filter. Fig. 3.7 shows the data flow graph of an FIR filter. Each circle with a plus sign ( + ) represents the addition of the node inputs, each labeled edge represents multiplication by the values of the edge label, and each empty cirle represents a time delay of one step, i.e. in each step the current value is stored and the previous value is retrieved (a so-called register). The FIR data flow graph is a sequence of $q$ stages, where each stage requires a multiplication, addition, and storage. Fig. 3.8 shows the data flow graph of an IIR filter. Each stage of the IIR data flow graph requires two multiplications, an addition of three arguments, and the storage of two values. So-called signal processors provide dedicated hardware units that are able to compute individual FIR and IIR stages in only a few clock cycles, which enables very fast filtering.


Fig. 3.9 Original data, FIR low pass filter (order 21) filtered data, and FIR filter coefficients.

The moving mean and exponential filter are special cases of discrete linear filters. Inserting the coefficient vectors $a=(1, \eta-1), b=(0, \eta)$ into (3.13) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=\eta \cdot x_{k-1}-(\eta-1) \cdot y_{k-1}=y_{k-1}+\eta\left(x_{k-1}-y_{k-1}\right) \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is equal to the exponential filter at (3.11). Inserting the coefficient vectors $a=(1), b=\underbrace{\frac{1}{q}, \ldots, \frac{1}{q}}_{q \text { times }})$ into (3.13) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=\sum_{i=0}^{q-1} \frac{1}{q} \cdot x_{k-i}=\frac{1}{q} \sum_{i=k-q+1}^{k} x_{i} \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is equal to the (asymmetric) moving mean at (3.9). The moving mean of order $q=2$ is also called a first order FIR low pass filter which means that it lets the low frequencies pass. Many other types of low pass, high pass, and other filter types have been defined. FIR or IIR filters of specific types with desired properties can be designed using filter coefficient tables in books or electronic form as well as software tools for filter design.

Fig. 3.9 shows the example data set (Figs. 3.4-3.6 left), the output of an FIR low pass filter of order 21 (middle), and the corresponding filter parameters $b_{0}, \ldots, b_{21}$ (right). All filter coefficients $b$ are positive and are on a symmetric bell-shaped curve. The largest value has the middle coefficient $b_{10}$, and the sum of all coefficients is $b_{0}+\ldots+b_{21}=1$. As for all FIR filters, we have $a=(1)$.

A popular family of IIR filters are the so-called Butterworth filters [2]. A first order Butterworth low pass filter with limit frequency $\omega_{g}=0.5$ has the filter coefficients $a=(1), b=(0.5,0.5)$, and corresponds to the first order FIR low pass filter and the second order moving mean. Table 3.1 shows the filter coefficients for the second order Butterworth low pass filter for the limit frequencies $\omega_{g}=0.01,0.003$, and 0.001. All filter coefficients are positive, and we have $2 \cdot b_{0}=b_{1}=2 \cdot b_{2}$. For $\omega_{g} \rightarrow 0$ we apparently obtain $a=(1,-2,1)$ and $b=(0,0,0)$. This corresponds to

Table 3.1 Filter coefficients for the second order Butterworth low pass filter for different limit frequencies.

| $\omega_{g}$ | $a_{0}$ | $a_{1}$ | $a_{2}$ | $b_{0}$ | $b_{1}$ | $b_{2}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.01 | 1 | -1.96 | 0.957 | $2.41 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | $4.83 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | $2.41 \cdot 10^{-4}$ |
| 0.003 | 1 | -1.99 | 0.987 | $2.21 \cdot 10^{-5}$ | $4.41 \cdot 10^{-5}$ | $2.21 \cdot 10^{-5}$ |
| 0.001 | 1 | -2 | 0.996 | $2.46 \cdot 10^{-6}$ | $4.92 \cdot 10^{-6}$ | $2.46 \cdot 10^{-6}$ |



Fig. 3.10 Original data and second order Butterworth low pass filtered data, $\omega_{g}=0.01,0.003$, and 0.001 .
an autoregressive system with

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=-2 y_{k-1}+y_{k-2} \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

which for zero initialization $y_{0}=y_{1}=0$ yields constant zero outputs $y_{k}=0$, and is unstable for all other initializations. Fig. 3.10 shows the output of second order Butterworth low pass filters with the parameters from Table 3.1. For $\omega_{g}=0.01$, noise and outliers are considerably reduced. Smaller limit frequencies cause the same effect that we already observed for exponential filters (Fig. 3.6): The filter output lags the filter input more and more as $\omega_{g}$ decreases, until for $\omega_{g} \rightarrow 0$ the output becomes zero. These IIR low pass filters have only 6 parameters, as opposed to the 22 parameters of the FIR low pass filter from Fig. 3.9. Compared to FIR filters, IIR filters need less parameters and require a lower computational effort, but are more sensitive to changes in their parameters and may become unstable.

### 3.4 Data Transformation

Different features may have considerably different ranges. For example, the price of a car in Euros and its horse power may differ by several orders of magnitude. If such features are used together, incorrect results may be obtained because the ranges of the features are so different. The left view of Fig. 3.11 shows a data


Fig. 3.11 Two features with distinct ranges: original data and standardized data.
set which is randomly generated using two-dimensional Gaussian distribution with mean $\mu=(30000,100)$ and standard deviation $s=(9000,30)$, so the two features are uncorrelated and differ by a factor of 300 . The data set appears as a horizontal line close to zero, so only the first (larger) feature is visible. This visualization might be appropriate, for example if the features are the lengths and widths of steel tubes in millimeters. But it might be inappropriate if the features are the price (in Euros) and horse power of cars, which might be considered equally important features. Also the choice of the feature units might be arbitrary. In our example it should not matter if we measure the car's power in horse power, kilowatts, or watts. In such cases it is useful to transform the feature data to similar data ranges. This transformation is called standardization. The minimal hypercube of a $p$-dimensional data set $X$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(X)=\left[\min \left\{X^{(1)}\right\}, \max \left\{X^{(1)}\right\}\right] \times \ldots \times\left[\min \left\{X^{(p)}\right\}, \max \left\{X^{(p)}\right\}\right] \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

so $H(X)$ contains all points in $X$, or $X \subseteq H$. If $X$ contains outliers or covers only part of the actually relevant feature space, then it might be more suitable not to consider the observed minimal hypercube but the relevant hypercube

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{*}(X)=\left[x_{\min }^{(1)}, x_{\max }^{(1)}\right] \times \ldots \times\left[x_{\min }^{(p)}, x_{\max }^{(p)}\right] \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the limits $x_{\min }$ and $x_{\max }$ might come from $X$, so $x_{\min }=\min \left\{X^{(i)}\right\}$ or $x_{\max }=$ $\max \left\{X^{(i)}\right\}$, or might be arbitrarily defined. In a suitable representation of the data all edges of the hypercube should have the same lengths. This corresponds to the transformation

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}^{(i)}=\frac{x_{k}^{(i)}-x_{\min }^{(i)}}{x_{\max }^{(i)}-x_{\min }^{(i)}} \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

that is called hypercube standardization.
Alternative standardization methods use statistical transformations of the data set $X$, for example using the mean $\bar{x}$ (2.1) and the standard deviation $s_{x}$ (3.2) of each
feature, which leads to the so-called $\mu-\sigma$-standardization

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}^{(i)}=\frac{x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}}{s_{x}^{(i)}} \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

The right view of Fig. 3.11 shows the $\mu-\sigma$-standardization of the data set shown on the left. The standardized data do not appear as a line but as a point cloud that possibly reflects the data structure more appropriately, but this depends on the semantics of the data, as pointed out before.

Hypercube standardization is appropriate for uniformly distributed features, and $\mu-\sigma$-standardization is appropriate for Gaussian distributed features. Many features can be at least approximately viewed as uniformly or Gaussian distributed. Other features, however, might be better modeled as asymmetric distributions with an upper or lower bound. For example, time differences between random events like order arrivals may follow a Poisson distribution that always yields positive values (lower bound zero) but allows arbitrarily large values with low probabilities (upper bound infinity). Hypercube or $\mu-\sigma$-standardization would not yield reasonable representations of such features. Instead, such features are often first transformed such that the resulting distribution can be better approximated by uniform or Gaussian distributions. To choose an appropriate transformation it is useful to first consider the observed and the desired data range. The following list presents some frequently used data tranformations and the corresponding data ranges.

- inverse transformation $f: \mathbb{R} \backslash\{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \backslash\{0\}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(x)=f^{-1}(x)=\frac{1}{x} \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

- root transformation $f:(c, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{+}$

$$
\begin{align*}
f(x) & =\sqrt[b]{x-c}  \tag{3.22}\\
f^{-1}(x) & =x^{b}+c, \quad c \in \mathbb{R}, b>0 \tag{3.23}
\end{align*}
$$

- logarithmic transformation $f:(c, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

$$
\begin{align*}
f(x) & =\log _{b}(x-c)  \tag{3.24}\\
f^{-1}(x) & =b^{x}+c, \quad c \in \mathbb{R}, b>0 \tag{3.25}
\end{align*}
$$

- Fisher-Z transformation $f:(-1,1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

$$
\begin{align*}
f(x) & =\operatorname{artanh} x=\frac{1}{2} \cdot \ln \frac{1+x}{1-x}  \tag{3.26}\\
f^{-1}(x) & =\tanh x=\frac{e^{x}-e^{-x}}{e^{x}+e^{-x}} \tag{3.27}
\end{align*}
$$



Fig. 3.12 Feature based merging of data sets.

### 3.5 Data Merging

Often the relevant data are not contained in a single data set but come from different data sets, files, data bases, or systems. For example, prices, sales figures, logistics data, and manufacturing parameters might be stored in different data sets and might have to be merged, i.e. feature vectors from different data sets have to be assigned to each other. This assignment can be done based on specific label features like codes of people or objects, (relative) time stamps, or (relative) locations. Fig. 3.12 shows the scheme of feature based merging two data sets. Feature vectors with the same labels are concatenated. Suitable mechanisms need to be defined if the labels only match approximately, for example, two time stamps 10:59 and 11:00 might be considered equivalent. Missing data might be generated if a label in one data set does not match labels in all other data sets.

## Problems

3.1. Does $\{0,0,0,1,0,0,0\}$ contain noise, outliers, or inliers?
3.2. Find the outliers and inliers in the following data sets: (a) $\{1,1,1,1,4,2,2,2,2\}$, (b) $\{1,2,3,4,5,1,3,2,1\}$, (c) $\{(2,9),(1,9),(2,1),(2,8),(1,7),(1,8),(2,7)\}$.
3.3. Compute the output of (a) an asymmetric moving mean filter, $q=3$, (b) an asymmetric moving median filter, $q=3$, (c) an exponential filter, $y_{0}=0, \eta=0.5$ for the time series $(0,0,0,1,0,0,0)$. Which filter result do you like best?
3.4. Standardize $\{(-1,-10),(1,10)\}$.

## References

1. B. A. Barsky and D. P. Greenberg. Determining a set of B-spline control vertices to generate an interpolating surface. Computer Graphics and Image Processing, 14(3):203-226, November 1980.
2. S. Butterworth. On the theory of filter amplifiers. Wireless Engineer, 7:536-541, 1930.
3. A. V. Oppenheim, R. W. Schafer, and J. R Buck. Discrete-Time Signal Processing. Prentice Hall, 1999.

## Chapter 4 <br> Data Visualization


#### Abstract

Data can often be very effectively analyzed using visualization techniques. Standard visualization methods for object data are plots and scatter plots. To visualize high-dimensional data, projection methods are necessary. We present linear projection (principal component analysis, Karhunen-Loève transform, singular value decomposition, eigenvector projection, Hotelling transform, proper orthogonal decomposition) and nonlinear projection methods (multidimensional scaling, Sammon mapping, auto-associator). Data distributions can be estimated and visualized using histogram techniques. Periodic time series can be analyzed and visualized using spectral analysis (cosine and sine transforms, amplitude and phase spectra).


### 4.1 Diagrams

The human eye (and brain) is a very powerful tool for analyzing data. Therefore, data visualization plays an important role in data analysis [1, 10]. Visualized data are also useful for documenting and communicating data analysis results, for example for discussions with domain experts. Paper and screens allow for twodimensional visualization. Projection methods are required for the visualization of higher-dimensional data. Fig. 4.1 shows the visualization and projection methods presented in this chapter.

Two-dimensional visualization uses two orthogonal coordinate axes and represents each feature vector as a point in the coordinate system. The visualization of only one feature is called a (simple) diagram. Visualizations of more than one feature can be done with scatter diagrams. A two-dimensional scatter diagram matches each feature to one of the two coordinate axes, so the feature plane matches the visualization plane. Higher-dimensional scatter diagrams project the higher dimensional feature space to the two-dimensional visualization plane or use specific symbols (geometric characters, numbers, grey values, or colors) to represent specific features. Three-dimensional scatter diagrams often use linear projections of the three-dimensional feature space to the two-dimensional visualization plane.


Fig. 4.1 Visualization and projection methods.


Fig. 4.2 Simple diagram, two-dimensional and three-dimensional scatter diagram.

Fig. 4.2 shows a three-dimensional data set $X=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}, z_{n}\right)\right\}$ as a simple diagram $X^{(1)}=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ (left), as a two-dimensional scatter diagram $X^{(1,2)}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}\right)\right\}$ (middle), and as a three-dimensional scatter diagram $X^{(1, \ldots, 3)}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}, z_{n}\right)\right\}$ (right). The simple diagram shows only the first feature, the two-dimensional scatter diagram displays the first and the second features, and the three-dimensional scatter diagram displays all three features. A three-dimensional scatter plot is only useful if the viewpoint is chosen appropriately. The simplest kind of projections are axis-parallel projections. In chapter 6 we will present feature selection methods which yield axis-parallel projections. Fig. 4.3 shows the three two-dimensional axis-parallel projections $(x, y),(x, z)$, and $(y, z)$ of the three-dimensional data set from above. Such axis-parallel projections can be simply produced by omitting the features $x, y$, or $z$. The two-dimensional diagrams then display the remaining pairs of features. In this example, the axis-parallel projections do not allow us to appropriately assess the geometric relation between the three features. In the next sections we present more sophisticated linear and nonlinear projection methods for the visualization of high-dimensional data.


Fig. 4.3 The three two-dimensional axis-parallel projections.


Fig. 4.4 Principal component analysis.

### 4.2 Principal Component Analysis

The principal component analysis (PCA) [4] is also called Karhunen-Loève transform, singular value decomposition (SVD), eigenvector projection, Hotelling transform, or proper orthogonal decomposition. The main idea of PCA is to find a linear projection of the data that optimally matches the data structure in the well defined sense of accounting for the maximum amount of variance that can be captured in the lower dimensional representations of the data. Fig. 4.4 shows a two-dimensional data set. A projection of these data to the axes $y_{1}$ and $y_{2}$ maximizes the amount of original variance that can be captured by any linear projection. The vectors $y_{1}$ and $y_{2}$ are called the main axes or principal components of the data set, hence the name principal component analysis.

PCA performs a linear transform of a data set $X$, which consists of a translation and a rotation.

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right) \cdot E \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $E$ is a rotation matrix that has to be determined from $X$. The corresponding inverse transform is

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}=y_{k} \cdot E^{T}+\bar{x} \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

To determine the rotation matrix $E$, the variance of $Y$ is maximized. The variance of $Y$ can be written as

$$
\begin{align*}
v_{y} & =\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n} y_{k}^{T} y_{k}  \tag{4.3}\\
& =\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right) \cdot E\right)^{T} \cdot\left(\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right) \cdot E\right)  \tag{4.4}\\
& =\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n} E^{T} \cdot\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right)^{T} \cdot\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right) \cdot E  \tag{4.5}\\
& =E^{T}\left(\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right)^{T} \cdot\left(x_{k}-\bar{x}\right)\right) \cdot E  \tag{4.6}\\
& =E^{T} \cdot C \cdot E \tag{4.7}
\end{align*}
$$

where $C$ is the covariance matrix of $X$. The elements of the covariance matrix are

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{i j}=\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right), \quad i, j=1, \ldots, p \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The transformation matrix $E$ should only represent a rotation, not a dilation, so we require

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{T} \cdot E=1 \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

This leads to a constrained optimization problem that can be solved using Lagrange optimization. For details on Lagrange optimization please refer to the appendix. The variance (4.7) can be maximized under the constraint (4.9) using the Lagrange function

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=E^{T} C E-\lambda\left(E^{T} E-1\right) \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The necessary condition for optima of $L$ is

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial L}{\partial E} & =0  \tag{4.11}\\
\Leftrightarrow \quad C E+E^{T} C-2 \lambda E & =0  \tag{4.12}\\
\Leftrightarrow \quad C E & =\lambda E \tag{4.13}
\end{align*}
$$

Equation (4.13) defines an eigenproblem which can be solved, for example, by conversion into the homogeneous equation system

$$
\begin{equation*}
(C-\lambda I) \cdot E=0 \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

The rotation matrix $E$ is the concatenation of the eigenvectors of $C$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{p}\right), \quad\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{p}, \lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{p}\right)=\operatorname{eig} C \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

The variances in $Y$ correspond to the eigenvalues $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{p}$ of $C$ because

$$
\begin{equation*}
C E=\lambda E \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \lambda=E^{T} C E=v_{y} \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

This means that PCA not only yields the coordinate axes in $Y$ and the transformation matrix that maximizes the variances in $Y$ but also the values of these variances. This can be used for a dimension reduction that maximizes the variances. To map a data set $X \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$ to a data set $Y \subset \mathbb{R}^{q}$ with $1 \leq q<p$, we can use a rotation (and projection) matrix $E$ generated by concatenating the eigenvectors with the $q$ largest eigenvalues.

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{q}\right) \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Choosing $q=2$ allows us to display an approximation of a high-dimensional data set in a two dimensional scatter plot. Dimension reduction is often applied to make subsequent data processing more efficient. To reduce a high-dimensional data set to only the most relevant features we might require that the projection covers a certain percentage of the variances, say $95 \%$, so we choose $q$ to satisfy

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{q} \lambda_{i} / \sum_{i=1}^{p} \lambda_{i} \geq 95 \% \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $p=q$, PCA performs a translation and a rotation of the data set, no projection, so the inverse PCA completely recovers the original data and the transformation error is zero. For $q<p$, PCA performs a projection that causes an information loss, so inverse PCA yields $x_{k}^{\prime}, k=1, \ldots, n$, with typically $x_{k}^{\prime} \neq x_{k}$. It can be shown that the average quadratic transformation error is equal to the sum of the eigenvalues of the omitted eigenvectors.

$$
\begin{equation*}
e=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}-x_{k}^{\prime}\right)^{2}=\sum_{i=q+1}^{p} \lambda_{i} \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

PCA chooses the eigenvectors with the largest eigenvalues, so PCA yields the projection with not only the largest variance but also the smallest quadratic transformation error. In our derivation of PCA we maximized the variance and found that the same method minimizes the quadratic transformation error. PCA can also be derived in the reverse order: if we minimize the quadratic transformation error, then we will find that the same method maximizes the variance.

We illustrate PCA with a simple example. Fig. 4.5 shows the data set

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\{(1,1),(2,1),(2,2),(3,2)\} \tag{4.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

with mean (2.1) and covariance (4.8)

$$
\begin{align*}
\bar{x} & =\frac{1}{2} \cdot(4,3)  \tag{4.21}\\
C & =\frac{1}{3} \cdot\left(\begin{array}{ll}
2 & 1 \\
1 & 1
\end{array}\right) \tag{4.22}
\end{align*}
$$



Fig. 4.5 Principal component analysis, example.
and the eigenvalues and eigenvectors (4.15)

$$
\begin{align*}
& \lambda_{1}=0.8727  \tag{4.23}\\
& \lambda_{2}=0.1273  \tag{4.24}\\
& v_{1}=\binom{-0.85065}{-0.52573}  \tag{4.25}\\
& v_{2}=\binom{0.52573}{-0.85065} \tag{4.26}
\end{align*}
$$

If we map the $p=2$ dimensional data set to a $q=1$ dimensional data set, then we choose $v_{1}$, the eigenvector with the largest eigenvalue, for the rotation matrix. This projection covers $87 \%$ (4.23) of the variances and has a projection error of $13 \%$ (4.24). The new coordinate system consists of only one axis that is shown in Fig. 4.5 as an arrow $v_{1}$ originating at $\bar{x}$. The rotation (and projection) matrix is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=v_{1}=\binom{-0.85065}{-0.52573} \tag{4.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

which yields the projected data (4.1)

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y=\{1.1135,0.2629,-0.2629,-1.1135\} \tag{4.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Inverse PCA (4.2) yields

$$
\begin{align*}
X^{\prime}=\{ & (1.0528,0.91459),(1.7764,1.3618),  \tag{4.29}\\
& (2.2236,1.6382),(2.9472,2.0854)\} \neq X
\end{align*}
$$

These projections $X^{\prime}$ are on the principal axis of $X$, the coordinate vector $v_{1}$, see Fig. 4.5 (right). Our example illustrates a PCA projection of a two-dimensional data set to a one-dimensional data set. More frequently, PCA is used to map higherdimensional data, in particular to two-dimensional data for visualization.

PCA is a linear mapping with low computational effort and high robustness. Complex nonlinear data structures can not be appropriately projected by linear mappings but require nonlinear approaches. The following sections present three popular examples for such nonlinear projections: multidimensional scaling, Sammon mapping, and auto-associators.

### 4.3 Multidimensional Scaling

Multidimensional scaling (MDS) [11] is a nonlinear mapping based on matrix decomposition. Given the data matrix $X \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times p}$, eigendecomposition of the product matrix $X X^{T}$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
X X^{T}=Q \Lambda Q^{T}=\left(Q \sqrt{\Lambda}^{T}\right) \cdot\left(\sqrt{\Lambda} Q^{T}\right)=\left(Q \sqrt{\Lambda}^{T}\right) \cdot\left(Q \sqrt{\Lambda}^{T}\right)^{T} \tag{4.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $Q=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)$ is the matrix of eigenvectors of $X X^{T}$ and $\Lambda$ is the diagonal matrix whose diagonal elements are the corresponding eigenvalues of $X X^{T}, \Lambda_{i i}=\lambda_{i}$, $i=1, \ldots, n$. Using this eigendecomposition, an estimate for $X$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y=Q \sqrt{\Lambda}^{T} \tag{4.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

To produce lower dimensional projections $Y \subset \mathbb{R}^{q}, q<p$, only the first $q$ dimensions are used and then scaled so that their squared norms are equal to the corresponding eigenvalues.

MDS is not only suited to find a mapping $Y$ from a data matrix $X$, but also from a Euclidean distance matrix $D$. Assume that $D$ is associated with a data set $\tilde{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times p}$, arbitrarily choose $\tilde{x}_{a}, a \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, as an anchor point, and transform $\tilde{X}$ to $X$ in a coordinate system with origin $\tilde{x}_{a}$, so

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}=\tilde{x}_{k}-\tilde{x}_{a} \tag{4.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

$k=1, \ldots, n$, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{x}_{i}-\tilde{x}_{j}=x_{i}-x_{j} \tag{4.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

$i, j=1, \ldots, n$. Taking the scalar product of each side with itself yields

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left(\tilde{x}_{i}-\tilde{x}_{j}\right)\left(\tilde{x}_{i}-\tilde{x}_{j}\right)^{T}=\left(x_{i}-x_{j}\right)\left(x_{i}-x_{j}\right)^{T}  \tag{4.34}\\
\Rightarrow d_{i j}^{2}=x_{i} x_{i}^{T}-2 x_{i} x_{j}^{T}+x_{j} x_{j}^{T}=d_{i a}^{2}-2 x_{i} x_{j}^{T}+d_{j a}^{2}  \tag{4.35}\\
\Rightarrow x_{i} x_{j}^{T}=\left(d_{i a}^{2}+d_{j a}^{2}-d_{i j}^{2}\right) / 2 \tag{4.36}
\end{gather*}
$$

so the product matrix $X X^{T}$ can be computed from the Euclidean distance matrix $D$.
We illustrate MDS with the example data set from the previous section, so consider again the data set from Fig. 4.5. Subtracting the mean yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\left\{\left(-1,-\frac{1}{2}\right),\left(0,-\frac{1}{2}\right),\left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right),\left(1, \frac{1}{2}\right)\right\} \tag{4.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the product matrix

$$
X X^{T}=\frac{1}{4}\left(\begin{array}{rrrr}
5 & 1 & -1 & -5  \tag{4.38}\\
1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\
-1 & -1 & 1 & 1 \\
-5 & -1 & 1 & 5
\end{array}\right)
$$

The largest eigenvalue and the corresponding eigenvector of $X X^{T}$ are

$$
\begin{gather*}
\lambda_{1} \approx 2.618  \tag{4.39}\\
v_{1} \approx\left(\begin{array}{r}
-0.6882 \\
-0.1625 \\
0.1625 \\
0.6882
\end{array}\right) \tag{4.40}
\end{gather*}
$$

and with (4.31) we finally obtain the MDS projection

$$
Y \approx\left(\begin{array}{r}
-0.6882  \tag{4.41}\\
-0.1625 \\
0.1625 \\
0.6882
\end{array}\right) \sqrt{2.618} \approx\left(\begin{array}{r}
-1.1135 \\
-0.2629 \\
0.2629 \\
1.1135
\end{array}\right)
$$

The quality of this mapping can be visualized by a so-called Shepard diagram, a scatter plot of the distances $d_{i j}^{y}$ in the projection versus the distances $d_{i j}^{x}$ of the original data, $i, j=1, \ldots, n$. For our example we have

$$
\begin{align*}
D^{x}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 1 & \sqrt{2} & \sqrt{5} \\
1 & 0 & 1 & \sqrt{2} \\
\sqrt{2} & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
\sqrt{5} & \sqrt{2} & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right) \approx\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 1 & 1.4142 & 2.2361 \\
1 & 0 & 1 & 1.4142 \\
1.4142 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
2.2361 & 1.4142 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)  \tag{4.42}\\
D^{y} \approx\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 0.8507 & 1.3764 & 2.2270 \\
0.8507 & 0 & 0.5257 & 1.3764 \\
1.3764 & 0.5257 & 0 & 0.8507 \\
2.2270 & 1.3764 & 0.8507 & 0
\end{array}\right) \tag{4.43}
\end{align*}
$$

Fig. 4.6 shows the corresponding Shepard diagram. Multiple points in the same matrix triangle are displayed as ticks with circles. An optimal mapping would yield only points on the main diagonal with $d_{i j}^{x}=d_{i j}^{y}$ but this can usually not be achieved. For this example MDS yields a Shepard diagram with several points very close to the main diagonal but one point is quite distant (referring to $d_{23}^{x}=d_{32}^{x}=1$ and $d_{23}^{y}=d_{32}^{y} \approx 0.5257$ ). So MDS yields a very good mapping for many pairwise distances at the expense of one distance that is not mapped well. The points in the Shepard diagram are connected by dashed lines. In this example the line segments


Fig. 4.6 Shepard diagram for MDS projection (four points data set).


Fig. 4.7 Helix data set, MDS projection, and projection errors
show that the MDS mapping is monotonic, i.e. increasing $d^{x}$ does not decrease $d^{y}$. Finding such monotonic mappings is the purpose of an alternative method proposed by Torgerson [9].

We further illustrate MDS using two more complex data sets. The first data set is a 3D helix curve defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\left\{(t, \sin t, \cos t)^{T} \mid t \in\{0,0.1,0.2, \ldots, 50\}\right\} \tag{4.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fig. 4.7 shows this data set (left), its MDS projection onto the plane (center), and its projection error $\Delta d=d_{i j}^{y}-d_{i j}^{x}$ over $d_{i j}^{x}$ (right). We plot the projection errors $\Delta d$ here because they are much lower than the distances $d^{x}$, so a Shepard diagram would only display a close approximate of the main diagonal. The MDS mapping (Fig. 4.7, center) represents the data structure quite well, and the projection errors are low. However, all of the projection errors are non-positive, so MDS exhibits a tendency towards lower distances $d^{y}$ for this example. The second more complex data set considered here is a 3D bent square defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\left\{\left(\left(t_{1}-1\right) \cdot\left(t_{2}-1\right), t_{1}, t_{2}\right)^{T} \mid t_{1}, t_{2} \in\{0,0.1,0.2, \ldots, 2\}\right\} \tag{4.45}
\end{equation*}
$$



Fig. 4.8 Bent square data set, MDS projection, and projection errors

Fig. 4.8 shows this data set, its MDS projection onto the plane, and its projection error. The MDS mapping represents the data structure vey well, but again the projection errors indicate a tendency towards lower $d^{y}$.

### 4.4 Sammon Mapping

The idea of Sammon mapping [6] is to map a data set $X \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$ to a data set $Y \subset \mathbb{R}^{q}$ so that distances between pairs of elements of $X$ are similar to the corresponding distances between pairs of elements of $Y$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
d_{i j}^{x} \approx d_{i j}^{y} \tag{4.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

$i, j=1, \ldots, n$. Sammon mapping may also be used to produce a feature representation $Y$ from a Euclidean distance matrix $D^{x}$. $Y$ is found by minimizing the error between $D^{x}$ and $D^{y}$. Candidates for this error functional are

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
E_{1}=\frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n}\left(d_{i j}^{x}\right)^{2}} & \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n}\left(d_{i j}^{y}-d_{i j}^{x}\right)^{2} \\
E_{2}= & \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n}\left(\frac{d_{i j}^{y}-d_{i j}^{x}}{d_{i j}^{x}}\right)^{2} \\
E_{3}=\frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n} d_{i j}^{x}} & \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n} \frac{\left(d_{i j}^{y}-d_{i j}^{x}\right)^{2}}{d_{i j}^{x}} \tag{4.49}
\end{array}
$$

The first factors in $E_{1}$ and $E_{3}$ depend only on $X$ and may therefore be ignored in the minimization. $E_{1}$ is the absolute quadratic error, $E_{2}$ is the relative quadratic


Fig. 4.9 Four points data set: pairwise distances, Sammon mapping after $0, \ldots, 10$ iterations, Sammon error function.
error, and $E_{3}$ is a compromise between the absolute and relative quadratic error that usually yields the best results, so we will restrict our attention to $E_{3}$ here. No closed form solution has been found for minima of $E_{3}$, so $E_{3}$ is iteratively minimized by gradient descent or Newton optimization (see the appendix for more details). For the computation of the first and second order derivatives of $E_{3}$ notice that

$$
\frac{\partial d_{i j}^{y}}{\partial y_{k}}=\frac{\partial}{\partial y_{k}}\left\|y_{i}-y_{j}\right\|= \begin{cases}\frac{y_{k}-y_{j}}{d_{k j}^{y}} & \text { if } i=k  \tag{4.50}\\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

so we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial E_{3}}{\partial y_{k}} & =\frac{2}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n} d_{i j}^{x}} \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\
j \neq k}}^{n}\left(\frac{1}{d_{k j}^{x}}-\frac{1}{d_{k j}^{y}}\right)\left(y_{k}-y_{j}\right)  \tag{4.51}\\
\frac{\partial^{2} E_{3}}{\partial y_{k}^{2}} & =\frac{2}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n} d_{i j}^{x}} \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\
j \neq k}}^{n}\left(\frac{1}{d_{k j}^{x}}-\frac{1}{d_{k j}^{y}}-\frac{\left(y_{k}-y_{j}\right)^{2}}{\left(d_{k j}^{y}\right)^{3}}\right) \tag{4.52}
\end{align*}
$$

Consider again the data set from Fig. 4.5. Fig. 4.9 (left) shows the pairwise distances $d^{x}$ given in (4.42). We initialize $Y=\{1,2,3,4\}$, which corresponds to the bottom row in Fig. 4.9 (center) and yields the distance matrix

$$
D^{y}=\left(\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 1 & 2 & 3  \tag{4.53}\\
1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\
2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
3 & 2 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

and the initial Sammon error


Fig. 4.10 Shepard diagrams for Sammon projection (four points data set).

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{3}=\frac{1}{3 \cdot 1+2 \cdot \sqrt{2}+\sqrt{5}} \cdot\left(2 \cdot \frac{(2-\sqrt{2})^{2}}{\sqrt{2}}+\frac{(3-\sqrt{5})^{2}}{\sqrt{5}}\right) \approx 0.0925 \tag{4.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the first (leftmost) value of the Sammon error function shown in Fig. 4.9 (right). For this initialization, the error gradients are

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial E_{3}}{\partial y_{1}}=\frac{2}{3 \cdot 1+2 \cdot \sqrt{2}+\sqrt{5}} \cdot\left(-\frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}}-\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{\sqrt{5}}\right) \approx-0.1875  \tag{4.55}\\
& \frac{\partial E_{3}}{\partial y_{2}}=\frac{2}{3 \cdot 1+2 \cdot \sqrt{2}+\sqrt{5}} \cdot\left(-\frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \approx-0.1027  \tag{4.56}\\
& \frac{\partial E_{3}}{\partial y_{3}}=\frac{2}{3 \cdot 1+2 \cdot \sqrt{2}+\sqrt{5}} \cdot\left(\frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \approx 0.1027  \tag{4.57}\\
& \frac{\partial E_{3}}{\partial y_{4}}=\frac{2}{3 \cdot 1+2 \cdot \sqrt{2}+\sqrt{5}} \cdot\left(\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{\sqrt{5}}+\frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \approx 0.1875 \tag{4.58}
\end{align*}
$$

With step length $\alpha=1$, gradient descent produces the next estimate $Y \approx$ (1.1875, 2.1027, 2.8973, 3.8125), which corresponds to the second row in Fig. 4.9 (center). The center and right view of Fig. 4.9 show the values of $Y$ and $E_{3}$ for the first ten gradient descent steps. After ten steps we obtain $Y \approx$ $(1.3058,2.1359,2.8641,3.6942)$ and $E_{3} \approx 0.0212$. Fig. 4.10 shows the Shepard diagrams for the Sammon projection after one and ten gradient descent steps. In contrast to MDS (Fig. 4.6), the Sammon mapping yields a Shepard diagram where all points are close to the main diagonal but none of them is very close. Figs. 4.11 and 4.12 show the Sammon mapping results for the helix (4.44) and bent square (4.45) data sets (Newton's method, random initialization, 100 steps). Compared with MDS (Figs. 4.7 and 4.8), the Sammon mapping yields lower and unbiased projection er-


Fig. 4.11 Helix data set, Sammon projection, and projection errors


Fig. 4.12 Bent square data set, Sammon projection, and projection errors
rors $|\Delta d|$. The computational effort of our implementation of the Sammon mapping, however, is substantially higher than that of MDS.

### 4.5 Auto-Associator

The idea of an auto-associator is to find two functions $f: \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{q}$ and $g: \mathbb{R}^{q} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{p}$ that map $X$ to $Y$ and back, so

$$
\begin{align*}
& y_{k}=f\left(x_{k}\right)  \tag{4.59}\\
& x_{k} \approx g\left(y_{k}\right) \tag{4.60}
\end{align*}
$$

$k=1, \ldots, n$. Given the data set $X, g \circ f$ can be found by regression (see section 6), where each vector $x_{k}$ serves as input and output training vector at the same time, hence the name auto-associator.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k} \approx g \circ f\left(x_{k}\right)=g\left(f\left(x_{k}\right)\right) \tag{4.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

Once the regression function $g \circ f$ is trained, the forward transformation function $f$ is used to generate the projected data $Y$ from $X$ using (4.59), and the backward transformation function is ignored. Popular regression methods used for auto-associators include multi layer perceptrons (MLP, see chapter 6). In general, the quality of the mapping using auto-associators strongly depends on the underlying regression function. Depending on the algorithm used to find the parameters of the regression model, the computational complexity may be relatively high.

### 4.6 Histograms

The previous sections presented methods to visualize individual feature vectors. This section deals with visualizing the statistical distribution of features. Statistical measures like the mode, median or mean can be used to describe features on a very abstract level (see chapter 2). More details about the distribution of the feature values can be obtained and visualized by histograms. We consider histograms of individual features, which for simplicity we denote as one-dimensional data sets $X$. We define $m$ histogram intervals

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\xi_{1}, \xi_{2}\right],\left[\xi_{2}, \xi_{3}\right], \ldots,\left[\xi_{m}, \xi_{m+1}\right]}  \tag{4.62}\\
& \xi_{1}=\min X, \quad \xi_{m+1}=\max X \tag{4.63}
\end{align*}
$$

and count the number of values in $X$ in each interval. This yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{k}(X)=\left|\left\{\xi \in X \mid \xi_{k} \leq \xi<\xi_{k+1}\right\}\right|, k=1, \ldots, m \tag{4.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the sum of the counts is the number of data points

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=1}^{m} h_{k}(X)=|X|=n \tag{4.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equally spaced intervals $\Delta x=(\max X-\min X) / m$ are often used, which yield the interval borders $\xi_{k}=\min X+(k-1) \cdot \Delta x, k=1, \ldots, m+1$. Each count $h_{k}$, $k=1, \ldots, m$ can be visualized as a vertical bar. The left and right borders of each bar represent the lower and upper limits of the corresponding data interval. The height of each bar represents the interval count. A diagram of such bars is called a histogram. Fig. 4.13 shows the histograms $(m=100)$ of the three features of the data set from Fig. 4.3. The fist two features are apparently approximately equally distributed. The third feature contains many values close to zero and to one, which correspond to the upper and lower planes in the scatter plot in Fig. 4.2. Such data accumulations can be easily seen in histograms. Histograms can also be used to estimate the underlying statistical distributions (for example equal, Gaussian, Poisson, or scale free distribution). The parameter $m$, the number of histogram bins, has to be


Fig. 4.13 Histograms of the features $x, y, z$.
chosen carefully. If $m$ is too low, then the shape of the distribution can not be recognized from the histogram. The same observation holds if $m$ is too high, because then most bins are empty or contain only few points. A good choice of $m$ generally depends on the data. Some rules of thumb often yield good estimates for $m$ :

- Sturgess [8] (based on the number of data)

$$
\begin{equation*}
m=1+\log _{2} n \tag{4.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Scott [7] (based on the standard deviation, tailored for Gaussian distributions)

$$
\begin{equation*}
m=\frac{3.49 \cdot s}{\sqrt[3]{n}} \tag{4.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Freedman and Diaconis [2] (based on the middle 50\% quantile, also suitable for long tailed distributions)

$$
\begin{equation*}
m=\frac{2 \cdot\left(Q_{75 \%}-Q_{25 \%}\right)}{\sqrt[3]{n}} \tag{4.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

with quantiles defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\left\{x \in X \mid x \leq Q_{\varphi}\right\}\right|=\varphi \cdot n \tag{4.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

Instead of equally spaced bins, the histogram intervals may have different widths, for example to obtain a finer resolution in areas with high data densities [3]. Histogram intervals may be defined as $1 / m$ quantiles, so that each bin contains the same number of data. In the visualization of such non-equally spaced histograms the height of each bar does not correspond to the number of data but to the number of data divided by the bin width, so the area of each bar reflects the corresponding number of data.

Every datum between the lower and upper bounds of a histogram interval is counted for the respective bin, whether it is close to the interval center or close to the border. A fuzzy histogram [5] partially counts data for several neighboring bins.


Fig. 4.14 Triangular membership functions.

For example, a datum at the border between two bins may be counted as half for one and half for the other bin. More generally, fuzzy histograms use data counts in fuzzy intervals defined by membership functions $\mu: X \rightarrow[0,1]$. For example, triangular membership functions are often used (Fig. 4.14):

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mu_{1}(x)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } x<\xi_{1} \\
\frac{\xi_{2}-x}{\xi_{2}-\xi_{1}} & \text { if } \xi_{1} \leq x<\xi_{2} \\
0 & \text { if } x \geq \xi_{2}\end{cases}  \tag{4.70}\\
& \mu_{k}(x)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } x<\xi_{k-1} \\
\frac{x-\xi_{k-1}}{\xi_{k}-\xi_{k-1}} & \text { if } \xi_{k-1} \leq x<\xi_{k} \\
\xi_{k+1}-x \\
\xi_{k+1}-\xi_{k} & \text { if } \xi_{k} \leq x<\xi_{k+1} \\
0 & \text { if } x \geq \xi_{k+1}\end{cases}  \tag{4.71}\\
& k=2, \ldots, m-1
\end{align*}
$$

Such membership functions assign each datum $x$ to a certain extent to one or two intervals, where the sum of counts is one. In general, the counts of fuzzy histograms are computed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{h}_{k}(X)=\sum_{x \in X} \mu_{k}(x) \tag{4.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

Conventional histograms are special cases of fuzzy histograms for complementary rectangular membership functions.

### 4.7 Spectral Analysis

The purpose of data visualization is to show important data characteristics. Important characteristics of time series data are spectral features such as the amplitude and phase spectra. These spectra are motivated by the Fourier theorem: Every continuously differentiable function $f$ can be decomposed into cosine and sine components
according to

$$
\begin{align*}
& f(x)=\int_{0}^{\infty}(a(y) \cos x y+b(y) \sin x y) d y \quad \text { with }  \tag{4.74}\\
& a(y)=\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(u) \cos y u d u  \tag{4.75}\\
& b(y)=\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(u) \sin y u d u \tag{4.76}
\end{align*}
$$

Based on this theorem we define the Fourier cosine transform $F_{c}(y)$ and the Fourier sine transform $F_{s}(y)$.

$$
\begin{align*}
& F_{c}(y)=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} f(x) \cos x y d x  \tag{4.77}\\
& f(x)=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} F_{c}(y) \cos x y d y  \tag{4.78}\\
& F_{s}(y)=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} f(x) \sin x y d x  \tag{4.79}\\
& f(x)=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{0}^{\infty} F_{s}(y) \sin x y d y \tag{4.80}
\end{align*}
$$

The Fourier cosine and sine transforms can be applied to discrete functions by substituting $x=k \cdot T$ and $y=l \cdot \omega$ in (4.77-4.80), where $T$ is a time constant and $\omega$ is a frequency constant. The data $x_{k}, k=1, \ldots, n$, are considered to represent equidistant samples of the discrete function $f$, so $f(k \cdot T)=x_{k}, k=1, \ldots, n$. The Fourier transform then yields the Fourier cosine and sine transform data $F_{c}(l \cdot \omega)=y_{l}^{c}$ and $F_{s}(l \cdot \omega)=y_{l}^{s}, l=1, \ldots, m$.

$$
\begin{align*}
y_{l}^{c} & =\frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_{k} \cos k l \omega T  \tag{4.81}\\
x_{k}^{\prime} & =\frac{n \omega T}{\pi} \sum_{l=1}^{m} y_{l}^{c} \cos k l \omega T  \tag{4.82}\\
y_{l}^{s} & =\frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_{k} \sin k l \omega T  \tag{4.83}\\
x_{k}^{\prime} & =\frac{n \omega T}{\pi} \sum_{l=1}^{m} y_{l}^{s} \sin k l \omega T \tag{4.84}
\end{align*}
$$



Fig. 4.15 Time series data, absolute Fourier transforms, and reverse transforms (top: cosine, bottom: sine).

Fig. 4.15 (left) is a graph of the $n=5000$ points in the artificial data set

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\{(i, \cos (0.001 \cdot i)+0.5 \cdot \cos (0.01 \cdot i-1)) \mid i \in\{1, \ldots, 5000\}\} \tag{4.85}
\end{equation*}
$$

that comprises two periodic sequences, one with lower frequency and higher amplitude and the other with higher frequency and lower amplitude. Imagine that such a data set might be generated from sales figures with weekly and seasonal fluctuations. The center column in Fig. 4.15 shows the absolute values of the Fourier cosine transform (4.81) (top) and the Fourier sine transform (4.83) (bottom) for $m=100$ and $\omega T=10^{-4}$. The parameters $\omega$ and $T$ always occur as products $\omega T$, so $\omega T$ can be considered as only one parameter. Here, $\omega T=0.01$. The local maxima of both transforms are at about $y_{10}$ and $y_{100}$, which corresponds to the frequencies $10 \cdot \omega T=0.001$ and $100 \cdot \omega T=0.01$ and thus to the frequencies in the cosine terms of (4.85). The values of the maxima are $y_{9}^{c} \approx 0.9722, y_{98}^{c} \approx 0.4313, y_{14}^{s} \approx 0.7075$, and $y_{103}^{s} \approx 0.5104$, which roughly corresponds to the amplitudes of the cosine terms in (4.85), but especially $y_{98}^{c}$ and $y_{14}^{s}$ do not match well. The right column in Fig. 4.15 shows the reverse Fourier cosine transform (4.82) (top) and the reverse Fourier sine transform (4.84) (bottom). The reverse Fourier cosine transform approximately matches the original time series. The error (displayed as a dashed curve) is almost zero. However, the reverse Fourier sine transform is very different from the original time series (displayed here as the dashed curve).


Fig. 4.16 Orthogonal decomposition, amplitude and phase spectrum.

The Fourier cosine transform $y^{c}$ and the Fourier sine transform $y^{s}$ can be viewed as the legs of a right-angled triangle, as shown in Fig. 4.16 (left). The Fourier amplitude spectrum $y$ is defined as the hypotenuse and the Fourier phase spectrum is defined as the angle opposed to the sine of this triangle.

$$
\begin{align*}
& y_{l}=\sqrt{\left(y_{l}^{c}\right)^{2}+\left(y_{l}^{s}\right)^{2}}  \tag{4.86}\\
& p_{l}=\arctan \frac{y_{l}^{s}}{y_{l}^{c}} \tag{4.87}
\end{align*}
$$

Fig. 4.16 (center) shows the Fourier amplitude spectrum (4.86) of our example time series. The local maxima are at $y_{10} \approx 0.9784$ and $y_{101} \approx 0.5261$, and match quite well the frequencies and amplitudes of the cosine terms in (4.85). Fig. 4.16 (right) shows the Fourier phase spectrum (4.87). The angles at the amplitude maxima are $p_{10} \approx 0.2073$ and $p_{100} \approx 1.0320$, and approximately correspond with the original angle offsets of the cosine terms in (4.85). Thus, given time series data, Fourier analysis allows us to compute the amplitude spectrum $Y=\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}$ and the phase spectrum $P=\left\{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{m}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}$, that represent the frequencies, amplitudes, and phase angles of the spectral components of the time series.

## Problems

4.1. Find the pricipal axes of $X=\{(-3,-1,-1),(0,-1,0),(-2,-1,2),(1,-1,3)\}$.
4.2. Find a two-dimensional PCA projection of $X$, the reverse projection, the projection error, and plot a Shepard diagram of this projection.
4.3. Find a one-dimensional PCA projection of $X$, the reverse projection, the projection error, and plot a Shepard diagram of this projection.
4.4. What can you learn from the results of both projections?

## References

1. R. O. Duda and P. E. Hart. Pattern Classification and Scene Analysis. Wiley, New York, 1974.
2. D. Freedman and P. Diaconis. On the histogram as a density estimator: L2 theory. Probability Theory and Related Fields, 57(4):453-476, December 1981.
3. A. K. Jain. Fundamentals of Digital Image Processing. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1986.
4. K. Pearson. On lines and planes of closest fit to systems of points in space. Philosophical Magazine, 2(6):559-572, 1901.
5. T. A. Runkler. Fuzzy histograms and fuzzy chi-squared tests for independence. In IEEE International Conference on Fuzzy Systems, volume 3, pages 1361-1366, Budapest, July 2004.
6. J. W. Sammon. A nonlinear mapping for data structure analysis. IEEE Transactions on Computers, C-18(5):401-409, 1969.
7. D. W. Scott. On optimal and data-based histograms. Biometrika, 66(3):605-610, 1979.
8. H. A. Sturges. The choice of a class interval. Journal of the American Statistical Association, pages 65-66, 1926.
9. W. S. Torgerson. Theory and Methods of Scaling. Wiley, New York, 1958.
10. J. W. Tukey. Exploratory Data Analysis. Addison Wesley, Reading, 1987.
11. G. Young and A. S. Householder. Discussion of a set of points in terms of their mutual distances. Psychometrika, 3:19-22, 1938.

## Chapter 5 <br> Correlation


#### Abstract

Correlation quantifies the relationship between features in order to identify feature candidates that may be best suited to achieve desired effects. Linear correlation methods are robust and computationally efficient but detect only linear dependencies. Nonlinear correlation methods are able to detect nonlinear dependencies but need to be carefully parametrized. As a popular example for nonlinear correlation we present the chi-square test for independence that is based on histogram counts. Nonlinear correlation can also be quantified by the regression validation error. Correlation does not imply causality, so correlation analysis may reveal spurious correlations. If the underlying features are known, then spurios correlations may be handled with partial correlation methods.


### 5.1 Linear Correlation

Correlation quantifies the relationship between features. The purpose of correlation analysis is to understand the dependencies between features and to be able to systematically influence specific features. For example, for a production plant correlation analysis may yield the features that correlate aspects of product quality, so the target quality can be achieved by systematically modifying the most relevant features. Fig. 5.1 gives an overview of the correlation measures presented in this chapter. First, we focus on the linear correlation between pairs of features. In (2.20) and (4.8) we introduced the covariance matrix $C$ of a data set $X \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$, where each matrix element $c_{i j}$ denotes the covariance between the features $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(j)}$, $i, j=1, \ldots, p$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{i j}=\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right) \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $c_{i j}$ is positive large, then there is a strong positive dependency between $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(j)}$, i.e. high values of $x^{(i)}$ coincide with high values of $x^{(j)}$, and low values of $x^{(i)}$ coincide with low values of $x^{(j)}$. If $c_{i j}$ is negative large, then there is a strong


Fig. 5.1 Some important correlation measures.
negative dependency, i.e. high values of $x^{(i)}$ coincide with low values of $x^{(j)}$ and vice versa. If $c_{i j}$ is close to zero, then there is a weak dependency between $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(j)}$. If a feature is multiplied by a constant factor $\alpha$, then the covariance between this feature and any other feature will also increase by a factor $\alpha$, although we do not expect this feature to make more useful contributions to data analysis. The Pearson correlation coefficient compensates the effect of constant scaling by dividing the covariance by the product of the standard deviations of both features.

$$
\begin{align*}
s_{i j} & =\frac{c_{i j}}{s^{(i)} s^{(j)}}  \tag{5.2}\\
& =\frac{\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)}{\sqrt{\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)^{2}\right)\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)^{2}\right)}}  \tag{5.3}\\
& =\frac{\sum_{k=1}^{n} x_{k}^{(i)} x_{k}^{(j)}-n \bar{x}^{(i)} \bar{x}^{(j)}}{\sqrt{\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}\right)^{2}-n\left(\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)^{2}\right)\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(j)}\right)^{2}-n\left(\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)^{2}\right)}} \tag{5.4}
\end{align*}
$$

The standard deviations are the square roots of the variances, i.e. the square roots of the diagonal elements of the covariance matrix, $s^{(i)}=\sqrt{c_{i i}}$, so the (Pearson) correlation matrix can be directly computed from the covariance matrix.

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{i j}=\frac{c_{i j}}{\sqrt{c_{i i} c_{j j}}} \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $s_{i j} \in[-1,1]$. If $s_{i j} \approx 1$ then there is a strong positive correlation between $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(j)}$. If $s_{i j} \approx-1$ then there is a strong negative correlation. If $s_{i j} \approx 0$ then $x^{(i)}$
and $x^{(j)}$ are (almost) independent, so correlation can be interpreted as the opposite of independence. Notice that for $\mu-\sigma$-standardized data, covariance and correlation are equal.

### 5.2 Correlation and Causality

Correlation does not imply causality. A correlation between $x$ and $y$ may indicate four different causal scenarios or a combination of these:

1. coincidence
2. $x$ causes $y$
3. $y$ causes $x$
4. $z$ causes both $x$ and $y$

Even though the data suggest a correlation, this might be a coincidence, so $x$ and $y$ do not possess any causal connection (scenario 1). If there is a causal connection between $x$ and $y$, then correlation does not distinguish whether $x$ causes $y$ or $y$ causes $x$ (scenarios 2 and 3), for example a correlation between the consumption of diet drinks and obesity does not tell us whether diet drinks cause obesity or obesity causes people to drink diet drinks. Finally, there might be no causal connection between $x$ and $y$ : instead both $x$ and $y$ may be caused by $z$ (scenario 4). For example a correlation between forest fires and harvest does not imply that forest fires increase harvest nor that harvest causes forest fires. Instead, it may be that both forest fires and harvest are caused by sunny weather. This is called spurious correlation [4] or third cause fallacy. Correlation analysis does not help to identify which of these scenarios is valid, so additional expert knowledge is required.

If $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(j)}$ are correlated and also both correlated with $x^{(k)}$ (like in the spurious correlation scenario), then we might want to know the correlation between $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(j)}$ without the influence of $x^{(k)}$. This is called the partial or conditional correlation which is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{i j \mid k}=\frac{s_{i j}-s_{i k} s_{j k}}{\sqrt{\left(1-s_{i k}^{2}\right)\left(1-s_{j k}^{2}\right)}} \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The correlation between $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(j)}$ without the influence of the two features $x^{(k)}$ and $x^{(l)}$ is called bipartial correlation defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{i|k, j| l}=\frac{s_{i j}-s_{i k} s_{j k}-s_{i l} s_{j l}+s_{i k} s_{k l} s_{j l}}{\sqrt{\left(1-s_{i k}^{2}\right)\left(1-s_{j l}^{2}\right)}} \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The correlation of $x^{(i)}$ with a whole group of features $x^{\left(j_{1}\right)}, \ldots, x^{\left(j_{q}\right)}$ is called multiple correlation and defined as

$$
s_{i,\left(j_{1}, \ldots, j_{q}\right)}=\sqrt{\left(s_{i j_{1}} \ldots s_{i j_{q}}\right) \cdot\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & s_{j_{2} j_{1}} & \ldots & s_{j_{1} j_{q}}  \tag{5.8}\\
s_{j_{1} j_{2}} & 1 & \ldots & s_{j_{2} j_{q}} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
s_{j_{1} j_{q}} & s_{j_{2} j_{q}} & \ldots & 1
\end{array}\right)^{-1} \cdot\left(\begin{array}{c}
s_{i j_{1}} \\
s_{i j_{2}} \\
\vdots \\
s_{i j_{q}}
\end{array}\right)}
$$

For $q=1$, multiple correlation becomes the simple correlation.

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{i,\left(j_{1}\right)}=\left|s_{j_{1}}\right| \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $q=2$ we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{i,\left(j_{1}, j_{2}\right)}=\sqrt{\frac{s_{i j_{1}}^{2}+s_{i j_{2}}^{2}-2 s_{i j_{1}} s_{i_{j_{2}}} s_{j_{1} j_{2}}}{1-s_{j_{1} j_{2}}^{2}}} \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that $s_{i j}=[-1,1]$ holds for the (simple) correlation, but not necessarily for the partial, bipartial, and multiple correlations. For more information about linear correlation analysis refer to statistics textbooks, for example [1].

### 5.3 Chi-Square Test for Independence

The correlation methods presented in the previous section assume linear dependencies between features. Strong nonlinear dependencies might yield small or even zero linear correlations. A method to quantify the nonlinear correlation between features is the chi-square test for independence [2]. To quantify the nonlinear correlation between two features $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$, we first compute the histograms of $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$ for $r$ and $s$ bins, respectively.

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{(1)}=\left(h_{1}^{(1)}, \ldots, h_{r}^{(1)}\right), \quad h^{(2)}=\left(h_{1}^{(2)}, \ldots, h_{s}^{(2)}\right) \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we count the number of data that fall into each combination of the $i^{t h}$ bin of $x^{(1)}, i=1, \ldots, r$, and the $j^{t h}$ bin of $x^{(2)}, j=1, \ldots, s$, denote this count as $h_{i j}$, and write these counts as a matrix

$$
H=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
h_{11} & h_{12} & \cdots & h_{1 s}  \tag{5.12}\\
h_{21} & h_{22} & \cdots & h_{2 s} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
h_{r 1} & h_{r 2} & \cdots & h_{r s}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Fig. 5.2 illustrates the counts $h_{i}^{(1)}, h_{j}^{(2)}$, and $h_{i j}, i=1, \ldots, r, j=1, \ldots, s$. The histograms of $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$ are the row and column sums of $H$, respectively.


Fig. 5.2 Counts for the chi-square test for independence.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sum_{j=1}^{r} h_{i j}=h_{i}^{(1)}, \quad i=1, \ldots, r  \tag{5.13}\\
& \sum_{i=1}^{r} h_{i j}=h_{j}^{(2)}, \quad j=1, \ldots, s \tag{5.14}
\end{align*}
$$

If the features are independent, then the probability of a data point falling into the bin combination $h_{i j}$ is equal to the product of the probability of falling into bin $h_{i}^{(1)}$ and the probability of falling into $\operatorname{bin} h_{j}^{(2)}$, so

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{h_{i j}}{n}=\frac{h_{i}^{(1)}}{n} \cdot \frac{h_{j}^{(2)}}{n} \Rightarrow h_{i j}=\frac{h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}}{n} \tag{5.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
n=\sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{j=1}^{s} h_{i j}=\sum_{i=1}^{r} h_{i}^{(1)}=\sum_{j=1}^{s} h_{j}^{(2)} \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similar to Sammon's mapping, the deviation of $h_{i j}$ from complete independence (5.15) can be quantified using the absolute square error

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{1}=\left(h_{i j}-\frac{h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}}{n}\right)^{2} \tag{5.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

the relative square error

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{2}=\left(h_{i j}-\frac{h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}}{n}\right)^{2} /\left(\frac{h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}}{n}\right)^{2} \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

or a compromise between absolute and relative square error

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{3}=\left(h_{i j}-\frac{h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}}{n}\right)^{2} /\left(\frac{h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}}{n}\right) \tag{5.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Just as in Sammon's mapping we choose the compromise $E_{3}$ and obtain the chisquare test statistic

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{j=1}^{s} \frac{\left(n \cdot h_{i j}-h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}\right)^{2}}{h_{i}^{(1)} \cdot h_{j}^{(2)}} \tag{5.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

The hypothesis that the features are independent is rejected if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi^{2}>\chi^{2}(1-\alpha, r-1, s-1) \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\alpha$ is the significance level. Values of this distribution function are tabulated and available in [1], for example. Small values of $\chi^{2}$ confirm the hypothesis that the features are independent. The chi-square distribution is monotonic, so the feature pair that can be considered independent at the lowest significance level will yield the highest value of $\chi^{2}$. Therefore, to produce a list of pairs of features in order of their nonlinear correlation, it is not necessary to compute $\chi^{2}(1-\alpha, r-1, s-1)$, but it is sufficient to sort the plain $\chi^{2}$ values.

The number of bins has to be chosen carefully when using the chi-square test for independence, just like for histograms. Nonlinear dependencies can not be recognized if there are either too few or too many bins. If there are too few bins, then the resulting coarse grid can not adequately represent the functional dependendency. If there are too many bins, then most bins will be empty or contain only a few points. A good choice for the number of bins is often obtained using the rules of thumb given in the histogram section. Also fuzzy bins may be used in the chi-square test for independence, which yields the fuzzy chi-square test for independence [3].

An alternative to the chi-square test for independence, nonlinear correlation can also be quantified by building regression models and computing the regression error. This approach is discussed in more detail in the next chapter.

## Problems

5.1. Compute the covariance and correlation matrices for the data set $X=$ $\{(1,0),(2,0),(3,1),(4,1),(5,1),(6,1),(7,0),(8,0)\}$.
5.2. For the data set $X$, compute $\chi^{2}$ of the chi-square test for independence for two bins for each feature.
5.3. For the data set $X$, compute $\chi^{2}$ of the chi-square test for independence for four bins for the first feature and two bins for the second feature.
5.4. How do you interpret the three results?
5.5. Explain the difference between correlation and causality.

## References

1. D. Freedman, R. Pisani, and R. Purves. Statistics. W. W. Norton \& Company, New York, 2007.
2. K. Pearson. On the criterion that a given system of deviations from the probable in the case of a correlated system of variables is such that it can be reasonably supposed to have arisen from random sampling. Philosophical Magazine, 50(302):157-175, 1900.
3. T. A. Runkler. Fuzzy histograms and fuzzy chi-squared tests for independence. In IEEE International Conference on Fuzzy Systems, volume 3, pages 1361-1366, Budapest, July 2004.
4. H. A. Simon. Spurious correlation: A causal interpretation. Journal of the American Statistical Association, 49:467-479, 1954.

## Chapter 6 Regression


#### Abstract

Regression estimates functional dependencies between features to understand dependencies and to systematically control systems. Linear regression models can be efficiently computed from covariances but are restricted to linear dependencies. Substitution allows us to identify specific nonlinear dependencies by linear regression. Robust regression finds models that are robust against outliers. A popular family of nonlinear regression methods are universal approximators. We present two well-known examples for universal approximators from the field of artificial neural networks: the multilayer perceptron and radial basis function networks. Universal approximators can realize arbitrarily small training errors, but cross-validation is required to find models with low validation errors that generalize well on other data sets. Feature selection allows us to include only relevant features in regression models leading to more accurate models.


### 6.1 Linear Regression

The correlation methods discussed in the previous chapter quantify the degree of relationship between features. In contrast to correlation, regression estimates the actual functional dependency between features. For example, if correlation analysis has identified the features that mostly influence product quality, then regression models indicate to which specific values the features should be set to achieve a given target quality. Fig. 6.1 gives an overview of the regression methods presented in this chapter. Just as in the previous chapter we first focus on linear methods. Linear regression identifies a linear functional dependency between features. The linear approximation of a function of one feature $x^{(i)}=f\left(x^{(j)}\right), i, j \in\{1, \ldots, p\}$, can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(i)} \approx a \cdot x_{k}^{(j)}+b \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

so linear regression has to estimate the parameters $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ from $X$ by minimizing a suitable error functional. Conventional linear regression uses the average quadratic


Fig. 6.1 Some important regression methods.
regression error

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} e_{k}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-a \cdot x_{k}^{(j)}-b\right)^{2} \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

One necessary criterion for local extrema of $E$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial b}=-\frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-a \cdot x_{k}^{(j)}-b\right)=0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad b=\bar{x}_{k}^{(i)}-a \cdot \bar{x}_{k}^{(j)} \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

So we can write the regression error as

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}-a\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)\right)^{2} \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

The other necessary criterion for local extrema of $E$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial a}=-\frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}-a\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)\right)=0 \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

which yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
a=\frac{\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)}{\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(j)}-\bar{x}^{(j)}\right)^{2}}=\frac{c_{i j}}{c_{j j}} \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

So all pairwise linear regression models of a data set $X$ can be immediately computed from the means and the covariance matrix of $X$.

The linear approximation of a function of $m \in\{2,3, \ldots\}$ features $x^{(i)}=$ $f\left(x^{\left(j_{1}\right)}, \ldots, x^{\left(j_{m}\right)}\right), i, j_{1}, \ldots, j_{m} \in\{1, \ldots, p\}$, can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(i)} \approx \sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} \cdot x_{k}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}+b \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the parameters $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}, b \in \mathbb{R}$ can be found by minimizing

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} e_{k}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} \cdot x_{k}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}-b\right)^{2} \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

One necessary criterion for local extrema of $E$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial b}=-\frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} \cdot x_{k}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}-b\right)=0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad b=\bar{x}_{k}^{(i)}-\sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} \cdot \bar{x}^{\left(j_{l}\right)} \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

from which

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}-\sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} \cdot\left(x_{k}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}\right)\right)^{2} \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The other necessary criterion for local extrema of $E$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial a_{r}}=-\frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{\left(j_{r}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{r}\right)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}-\sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} \cdot\left(x_{k}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}\right)\right)=0 \tag{6.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

$r=1, \ldots, m$, which can be written as a system of linear equations

$$
\begin{gather*}
\sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{l}\right)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{\left(j_{r}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{r}\right)}\right)=\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}\right)\left(x_{k}^{\left(j_{r}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{r}\right)}\right)  \tag{6.12}\\
\Leftrightarrow \quad \sum_{l=1}^{m} a_{l} c_{j_{l} j_{r}}=c_{i j_{r}}, \quad r=1, \ldots, m \tag{6.13}
\end{gather*}
$$

which can be solved by various algorithms for solving systems of linear equations such as Gaussian elimination or Cramer's rule. Thus, all the parameters needed for multiple linear regression can be immediately computed from the means and the covariance matrix of $X$.

An equivalent result for linear regression is obtained by writing the regression problem (6.7) in matrix form. With (6.9) we denote

$$
Y=\left(\begin{array}{c}
x_{1}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}  \tag{6.14}\\
\vdots \\
x_{k}^{(i)}-\bar{x}^{(i)}
\end{array}\right) \quad X=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
x_{1}^{\left(j_{1}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{1}\right)} & \ldots & x_{1}^{\left(j_{m}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{m}\right)} \\
\vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
x_{k}^{\left(j_{1}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{1}\right)} & \ldots & x_{k}^{\left(j_{m}\right)}-\bar{x}^{\left(j_{m}\right)}
\end{array}\right) \quad A=\left(\begin{array}{c}
a_{1} \\
\vdots \\
a_{m}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and write (6.7) as

$$
\begin{align*}
Y & =X \cdot A  \tag{6.15}\\
X^{T} \cdot Y & =X^{T} \cdot X \cdot A \tag{6.16}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(X^{T} \cdot X\right)^{-1} \cdot X^{T} \cdot Y=A \tag{6.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\left(X^{T} \cdot X\right)^{-1} \cdot X^{T}$ is called the pseudoinverse of $X$, so the regression parameters $A$ can be computed as the product of the pseudoinverse of $X$ and the matrix $Y$.

As an example for multiple linear regression consider the data set

$$
X=\left(\begin{array}{rrr}
6 & 4 & -2  \tag{6.18}\\
2 & 1 & -1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 1 \\
2 & 4 & 2
\end{array}\right)
$$

We want to estimate a linear function $x^{(1)}=f\left(x^{(2)}, x^{(3)}\right)$, so

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.x_{k}^{(1)} \approx \bar{x}^{(1)}\right)+a_{1}\left(x_{k}^{(2)}-\bar{x}^{(2)}\right)+a_{2}\left(x_{k}^{(3)}-\bar{x}^{(3)}\right) \tag{6.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

The mean values of the features are

$$
\begin{align*}
& \bar{x}^{(1)}=\frac{6+2+2}{5}=2  \tag{6.20}\\
& \bar{x}^{(2)}=\frac{4+1+1+4}{5}=2  \tag{6.21}\\
& \bar{x}^{(3)}=\frac{-2-1+1+2}{5}=0 \tag{6.22}
\end{align*}
$$

The covariance matrix of $X$ is

$$
C=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
6 & 3.5 & -2.5  \tag{6.23}\\
3.5 & 3.5 & 0 \\
-2.5 & 0 & 2.5
\end{array}\right)
$$

The linear equations to determine $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ are

$$
\begin{align*}
c_{22} a_{1}+c_{32} a_{2} & =c_{12}  \tag{6.24}\\
c_{23} a_{1}+c_{33} a_{2} & =c_{13}  \tag{6.25}\\
(6.24) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad 3.5 a_{1} & =3.5 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad a_{1}=1  \tag{6.26}\\
(6.25) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad 2.5 a_{2} & =-2.5 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad a_{2}=-1 \tag{6.27}
\end{align*}
$$

So, multiple linear regression yields the function

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(1)} \approx 2+\left(x_{k}^{(2)}-2\right)-\left(x_{k}^{(3)}-0\right)=x_{k}^{(2)}-x_{k}^{(3)} \tag{6.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Inserting $X$ (6.18) into (6.28) yields an approximation error of zero in this case. This is usually not the case: the approximation error is usually larger than zero.

Using the pseudoinverse approach we obtain

$$
Y=\left(\begin{array}{l}
6-2  \tag{6.29}\\
2-2 \\
0-2 \\
0-2 \\
2-2
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
4 \\
0 \\
-2 \\
-2 \\
0
\end{array}\right) \quad X=\left(\begin{array}{rr}
4-2-2-0 \\
1-2-1-0 \\
0-2 & 0-0 \\
1-2 & 1-0 \\
4-2 & 2-0
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{rr}
2 & -2 \\
-1 & -1 \\
-2 & 0 \\
-1 & 1 \\
2 & 2
\end{array}\right)
$$

and so

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A=\left(X^{T} \cdot X\right)^{-1} \cdot X^{T} \cdot Y
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
14 & 0 \\
0 & 10
\end{array}\right)^{-1}\binom{14}{10}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{14} & 0 \\
0 & \frac{1}{10}
\end{array}\right)\binom{14}{10}=\binom{1}{-1} \tag{6.30}
\end{align*}
$$

which corresponds to the solution $a_{1}=1, a_{2}=-1$ reported above.

### 6.2 Linear Regression with Nonlinear Substitution

Substituting features by nonlinear functions of features enables linear regression to build nonlinear regression models based on given nonlinear functions. For example, the aerodynamic drag on any object moving through the atmosphere increases quadratically with the velocity. Although the dependence is nonlinear, we can estimate the drag coefficients by linear regression using drag and velocity data. To do so, we compute the quadratic velocities from the original velocity data and use the computed quadratic velocity as input feature. Another example for linear regression with nonlinear substitutions is the polynomial regression of degree $q \in\{1,2, \ldots\}$. In polynomial regression we use data for the input $x$ and the output $y$, and compute the additional input features

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{2}, \ldots, x^{q} \tag{6.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Linear regression with the input $x$ and the $q-1$ additional computed features then yields the polynomial coefficients $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{p}$ for the function

$$
\begin{equation*}
y \approx f(x)=\sum_{i=0}^{p} a_{i} x^{i} \tag{6.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 6.3 Robust Regression

The average quadratic error functional in conventional linear regression is very sensitive to outliers because they have a quadratic impact on the error. Robust error functionals aim to reduce the influence of outliers. Linear regression with robust error functionals is called robust linear regression. One example of a robust error functional is the Huber function where the errors are only squared if they are smaller than a threshold $\varepsilon>0$, otherwise they have only a linear impact [5].

$$
E_{H}=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \begin{cases}e_{k}^{2} & \text { if } e_{k}<\varepsilon  \tag{6.33}\\ 2 \varepsilon \cdot e_{k}-\varepsilon^{2} & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Another example of a robust error functional is least trimmed squares [10] which sorts the errors so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{1}^{\prime} \leq e_{2}^{\prime} \leq \ldots \leq e_{n}^{\prime} \tag{6.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

and only considers the $m$ smallest errors, $1 \leq m \leq n$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{L T S}=\sum_{k=1}^{m} e_{k}^{\prime 2} \tag{6.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 6.4 Neural Networks

A popular class of nonlinear regression methods are the so-called universal approximators $[4,6]$. Consider a continuous real-valued function $f$ on a compact subset $U \subset \mathbb{R}^{n}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \tag{6.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

A class $F$ of such functions $f$ is called a universal approximator if and only if for any $\varepsilon>0$ there exists a function $f^{*} \in F$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f(x)-f^{*}(x)\right|<\varepsilon \tag{6.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $x \in U$. The next two sections present two examples for universal approximators: the multilayer perceptron and radial basis function networks.

A multilayer perceptron (MLP) [9] is a feedforward neural network [3] that can be represented as a directed graph as shown in Fig. 6.2 (left). Because of the similarity with biological neural networks, MLP nodes are called neurons. The neurons are arranged in a layer structure. The inputs to the neurons in the first layer (input layer) are the network inputs and the outputs of the neurons in the last layer (output layer) are the network outputs. Layers between the input and output layers are called hidden layers. The network in Fig. 6.2 (left) has three layers: one input layer, one hidden layer, and one output layer. Each network edge represents a scalar information flow, so the number $p$ of input neurons and the number $q$ of output neurons


Fig. 6.2 Multilayer perceptron and sigmoidal function.
specifies the input and output dimensionality of the network which then realizes a function with $p$ inputs and $q$ outputs, $f: \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{q}$. The example in Fig. 6.2 (left) realizes a function with three inputs and three outputs, $f: \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3}$. Neurons of adjacent layers may be connected by directed edges. Each directed edge from neuron $i$ to neuron $j$ has a real-valued weight $w_{i j} \in \mathbb{R}$. For simplicity, non-existing edges are represented by edges with zero weights. The output of each neuron $i$ is the realvalued scalar $O_{i} \in \mathbb{R}$. The "effective" input to each neuron is the weighted sum of the inputs.

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{i}=\sum_{j} w_{j i} O_{j} \tag{6.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

The output of each neuron is computed from the effective input using a nonlinear activation function $s: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, so

$$
\begin{equation*}
O_{i}=s\left(I_{i}\right) \tag{6.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Frequently used activation functions include the sigmoid (s-shaped) functions, for example the logistic function

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x)=\frac{1}{1+e^{-x}} \in(0,1) \tag{6.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

or the hyperbolic tangent function

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(x)=\tanh x \in(-1,1) \tag{6.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Sigmoid functions map the possibly infinite range of neuron inputs to a finite range of neuron outputs (see the data transformations in chapter 3). For a given input, the MLP output can be computed using equations (6.38), (6.39), and (6.40) or (6.41). The MLP realizes a function $f: \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{q}$ specified by the weights $w_{i j}$. In nonlinear regression, a set $Z=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}\right)\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p+q}$ of pairs of input and output data vectors is used to estimate the weights $w_{i j}$, so that for each in-
put vector $x_{k}, k=1, \ldots, n$, the MLP estimates the corresponding output vector $y_{k}$, $y_{k} \approx f_{\mathrm{MLP}}\left(x_{k}\right),\left(x_{k}, y_{k}\right) \in Z$. In the context of artificial neural networks, the estimation of the parameters $w_{i j}$ from $Z$ is called training, and $Z$ is called the training data set. To illustrate the MLP training process we first consider three layer MLPs: MLPs with one input layer ( $p$ neurons), one hidden layer ( $h$ neurons), and one output layer ( $q$ neurons), so the MLP has a total of $p+h+q$ neurons and a total of $p \cdot h+h \cdot q$ edge weights, where missing connections are represented by zero weights. We define the neuron indices so that neurons $1, \ldots, p$ are the input neurons, $p+1, \ldots, p+h$ are the hidden neurons, and $p+h+1, \ldots, p+h+q$ are the output neurons, so the network input is $x=\left(I_{1}, \ldots, I_{p}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$ and the network output is $f_{\mathrm{MLP}}(x)=\left(O_{p+h+1}, \ldots, O_{p+h+q}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{q}$. For a given input $x_{k}$ the network output will be $f_{\operatorname{MLP}}\left(x_{k}\right)$ but it should be $y_{k}$, so we want to minimize the average quadratic error between $f_{\operatorname{MLP}}\left(x_{k}\right)$ and $y_{k}$. We denote $y_{k}=\left(O_{p+h+1}^{\prime}, \ldots, O_{p+h+q}^{\prime}\right)$ and write the error as

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{1}{q} \cdot \sum_{i=p+h+1}^{p+h+q}\left(O_{i}-O_{i}^{\prime}\right)^{2} \tag{6.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

We use gradient descent to find the weights $w_{i j}$, so after initialization we iteratively update the new weights $w_{i j}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{i j}-\alpha(t) \cdot \frac{\partial E}{\partial w_{i j}} \tag{6.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the neural network context the step length $\alpha$ is usually called learning rate. Using the chain rule, the error gradients can be computed from (6.38), (6.39), and (6.42).

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial w_{i j}} & =\frac{\partial E}{\partial O_{j}} \cdot \frac{\partial O_{j}}{\partial I_{j}} \cdot \frac{\partial I_{j}}{\partial w_{i j}}  \tag{6.44}\\
& \sim \underbrace{\left(O_{j}-O_{j}^{\prime}\right) \cdot s^{\prime}\left(I_{j}\right)}_{=\delta_{j}^{(O)}} \cdot O_{i}
\end{align*}
$$

The term $\delta_{j}^{(O)}, j=p+q+1, \ldots, p+q+r$, is called the delta value of the output layer. With this delta value, the update rule (6.43) can be written as the so-called delta rule [11]

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{i j}-\alpha(t) \cdot \delta_{j}^{(O)} \cdot O_{i} \tag{6.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

For the logistic function (6.40), for example, we can write the derivative $s^{\prime}\left(I_{j}\right)$ as

$$
\begin{align*}
s^{\prime}\left(I_{j}\right) & =\frac{\partial}{\partial I_{j}} \frac{1}{1+e^{-I_{j}}}=-\frac{1}{\left(1+e^{-I_{j}}\right)^{2}} \cdot\left(-e^{-I_{j}}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{1+e^{-I_{j}}} \cdot \frac{e^{-I_{j}}}{1+e^{-I_{j}}}=O_{j} \cdot\left(1-O_{j}\right) \tag{6.46}
\end{align*}
$$

so (6.44) and (6.46) yield an elegant formula for the delta value for the logistic activation function.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta_{j}^{(O)}=\left(O_{j}-O_{j}^{\prime}\right) \cdot O_{j} \cdot\left(1-O_{j}\right) \tag{6.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

To update the weights between input layer and hidden layer we have to consider the sum of derivatives of all outputs.

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial w_{i j}} & =\sum_{l=p+h+1}^{p+h+q} \frac{\partial E}{\partial O_{l}} \cdot \frac{\partial O_{l}}{\partial I_{l}} \cdot \frac{\partial I_{l}}{\partial O_{j}} \cdot \frac{\partial O_{j}}{\partial I_{j}} \cdot \frac{\partial I_{j}}{\partial w_{i j}} \\
& \sim \sum_{l=p+h+1}^{p+h+q}\left(O_{l}-O_{l}^{\prime}\right) \cdot s^{\prime}\left(I_{l}\right) \cdot w_{j l} \cdot s^{\prime}\left(I_{j}\right) \cdot O_{i}  \tag{6.48}\\
& =\sum_{l=p+h+1}^{p+h+q} \quad \delta_{l}^{(O)} \quad w_{j l} \cdot s^{\prime}\left(I_{j}\right) \cdot O_{i}
\end{align*}
$$

In correspondence with (6.44) we find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial w_{i j}}=\underbrace{s^{\prime}\left(I_{j}\right) \cdot \sum_{l=p+h+q}^{p+h+q} \delta_{l}^{(O)} \cdot w_{j l}}_{=\delta_{j}^{(H)}} \cdot O_{i} \tag{6.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

so corresponding to (6.45), the delta rule for the new weights between the input layer and the hidden layer is

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{i j}-\alpha(t) \cdot \delta_{j}^{(H)} \cdot O_{i} \tag{6.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

For the logistic activation function we obtain with (6.46) and (6.49)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta_{j}^{(H)}=\left(O_{j}\right) \cdot\left(1-O_{j}\right) \cdot \sum_{l=p+q+1}^{p+q+r} \delta_{l}^{(O)} \cdot w_{j l} \tag{6.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice the correspondence of the delta rules for the different layers. For more than three layers, we obtain the same delta rules, all instances of the so-called generalized delta rule, where the delta values are computed from the neuron outputs of the corresponding layer and the delta values of the succeeding layers. The weights of the whole network can be efficiently updated by starting with the weights of the output layer and then propagating back layer by layer up to the input layer. This scheme is called the backpropagation algorithm [14]. The backpropagation algorithm iteratively updates the MLP weights for each input-output vector of the training data set, and passes through the training data several times, where each pass is called a learning epoch. The complete backpropagation algorithm (for a three layer MLP) is illustrated in Fig. 6.3. After training the MLP can be used as a nonlinear regression function for previously unknown input vectors, which is called the recall mode.

1. input: neuron numbers $p, h, q \in\{1,2, \ldots\}$,
input training data $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$,
output training data $Y=\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{q}$,
learning rate $\alpha(t)$
2. initialize $w_{i j}$ for $i=1, \ldots, p, j=p+1, \ldots, p+h$
and for $i=p+1, \ldots, p+h, j=p+h+1, \ldots, p+h+q$
3. for each input-output vector pair $\left(x_{k}, y_{k}\right), k=1, \ldots, n$,
a. update the weights of the output layer

$$
w_{i j}=w_{i j}-\alpha(t) \cdot \delta_{j}^{(O)} \cdot O_{i}, \quad \begin{aligned}
& \quad=p+1, \ldots, p+h \\
& j=p+h+1, \ldots, p+h+q
\end{aligned}
$$

b. update the weights of the hidden layer

$$
w_{i j}=w_{i j}-\alpha(t) \cdot \delta_{j}^{(H)} \cdot O_{i}, \quad \begin{aligned}
& \quad i=1, \ldots, p \\
& j=p+1, \ldots, p+h
\end{aligned}
$$

4. repeat from (3.) until termination criterion holds
5. output: weights $w_{i j}, i=1, \ldots, p, j=p+1, \ldots, p+h$, and $i=p+1, \ldots, p+h, j=p+h+1, \ldots, p+h+q$

Fig. 6.3 Backpropagation algorithm for three layer MLP.

### 6.5 Radial Basis Function Networks

As a second example of universal approximators we present radial basis function ( $R B F$ ) networks [8]. Each RBF neuron implements a single radial basis function with the argument $\left\|x-\mu_{i}\right\|$, for example the frequently used Gaussian function

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{i}(x)=e^{-\left(\frac{\left\|x-\mu_{i}\right\|}{\sigma_{i}}\right)^{2}} \tag{6.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\mu_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}, \sigma_{i}>0, i=1, \ldots, c$. Fig. 6.4 shows an RBF network with three neurons and, correspondingly, three basis functions. Each neuron is connected with the input $x \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$ and, via a weight $w_{i} \in \mathbb{R}$, with the additive output neuron. Notice that each edge can carry a vector here as opposed to the scalar edges for MLPs in the previous section. The output of a Gaussian RBF network is

$$
\begin{equation*}
y=\sum_{i=1}^{c} w_{i} \cdot e^{-\left(\frac{\left\|x-\mu_{i}\right\|}{\sigma_{i}}\right)^{2}} \tag{6.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

RBF networks have two sets of parameters: the RBF parameters (the centers $\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{c}$ and standard deviations $\sigma_{1}, \ldots, \sigma_{c}$ for Gaussian RBFs) and the weights $w_{1}, \ldots, w_{c}$. The RBF parameters may be found by clustering (see chapter 9). Here, we illustrate an alternating optimization scheme, where the RBF parameters and weights are alternatingly optimized. The output of the RBF network is a linear com-


Fig. 6.4 RBF network with three radial basis functions.
bination of the $c$ individual RBF functions, so the weight coefficients can be found by linear regression (see above), for example using the pseudoinverse approach. The RBF parameters may be found by gradient descent. The average quadratic error of the RBF network is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{c} w_{i} e^{-\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-\mu_{i}\right\|}{\sigma_{i}}\right)^{2}}-y_{k}\right)^{2} \tag{6.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

This yields the error gradients

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial E}{\partial \mu_{i}}=\frac{4 w_{i}}{n \sigma_{i}^{2}} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{m} w_{j} e^{-\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-\mu_{j}\right\|}{\sigma_{j}}\right)^{2}}-y_{k}\right)\left\|x_{k}-\mu_{i}\right\| e^{-\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-\mu_{i}\right\|}{\sigma_{i}}\right)^{2}}  \tag{6.55}\\
& \frac{\partial E}{\partial \sigma_{i}}=\frac{4 w_{i}}{n \sigma_{i}^{3}} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{m} w_{j} e^{-\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-\mu_{j}\right\|}{\sigma_{j}}\right)^{2}}-y_{k}\right)\left\|x_{k}-\mu_{i}\right\|^{2} e^{-\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-\mu_{i}\right\|}{\sigma_{i}}\right)^{2}} \tag{6.56}
\end{align*}
$$

To find the optimal weights we have to know the RBF parameters, and to find the optimal RBF parameters we have to know the weights. We find both sets of parameters by alternating optimization. There are two variants of alternating optimization with two sets of variables. In the first variant, the weights are randomly initialized, then we alternatingly optimize the RBF parameters and the weights until a termination criterion holds. In the second variant, the RBF parameters are randomly initialized, then we alternatingly optimize the weights and the RBF parameters. Fig. 6.5 illustrates the RBF training using the first variant.

1. input: RBF number $c \in\{1,2, \ldots\}$,
input training data $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$,
output training data $Y=\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{r}$,
learning rate $\alpha(t)$
2. initialize weights $w_{1}, \ldots, w_{c} \in \mathbb{R}$
3. for each input-output vector pair $\left(x_{k}, y_{k}\right), k=1, \ldots, n$, update the RBF parameters

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mu_{i}=\mu_{i}-\alpha(t) \cdot \frac{\partial E}{\partial \mu_{i}}, \quad i=1, \ldots, c  \tag{6.55}\\
& \sigma_{i}=\sigma_{i}-\alpha(t) \cdot \frac{\partial E}{\partial \mu_{i}}, \quad i=1, \ldots, c \tag{6.56}
\end{align*}
$$

until termination criterion holds
4. for each input-output vector pair $\left(x_{k}, y_{k}\right), k=1, \ldots, n$, find the optimal weights $w_{1}, \ldots, w_{c} \in \mathbb{R}$ by linear regression
5. repeat from (3.) until termination criterion holds
6. output: RBF parameters $\mu_{i}, \sigma_{i}$ and weights $w_{i}, i=1, \ldots, c$

Fig. 6.5 Training algorithm for RBF networks.

### 6.6 Cross-Validation

Cross-validation is a method to validate statistical models generated from data, for example regression models. Regression models such as universal approximators are able to model given training data with very low or even zero error, if sufficiently many model parameters are used, for example when the number of hidden layer neurons or RBF functions is very high. Very low error models tend to overfitting, which means that they model the training data noise rather than the underlying inputoutput relation. In extreme cases, the number of model parameters matches or even exceeds the number of data, so the model is able to memorize the training data instead of finding a generalizing model. Such overfitting can be avoided by crossvalidation. The idea of cross-validation is to partition the available input-output data set $Z=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}\right)\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p+q}$ into a training data set $Z_{t} \subset Z$ and a disjoint validation data set $Z_{v} \subset Z, Z_{t} \cap Z_{v}=\{ \}, Z_{t} \cup Z_{v}=Z$, where the training data are used to build (train) a model $f$, and the validation data are used to validate this trained model (Fig. 6.6). For continuous regression problems, the average quadratic training error is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{t}=\frac{1}{\left|Z_{t}\right|} \sum_{(x, y) \in Z_{t}}\|y-f(x)\|^{2} \tag{6.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the average quadratic validation error is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{v}=\frac{1}{\left|Z_{v}\right|} \sum_{(x, y) \in Z_{v}}\|y-f(x)\|^{2} \tag{6.58}
\end{equation*}
$$



Fig. 6.6 Cross-validation.

Since the validation data are not used for training, a low validation error indicates that the trained model is a good representation of the underlying input-output relation.
$k$-fold cross-validation randomly partitions $Z$ into $k$ pairwise disjoint and (almost) equally sized subsets $Z_{1}, \ldots, Z_{k}$, where $Z_{i} \cap Z_{j}=\{ \}$ for all $i \neq j, Z_{1} \cup \ldots \cup Z_{k}=$ $Z$, and $\left|Z_{i}\right| \approx\left|Z_{j}\right|$ for all $i, j=1, \ldots, k$. Each of the subsets $Z_{i}, i=1, \ldots, k$, is used to validate the model $f_{i}$ trained with the remaining $k-1$ subsets $Z_{j}, j=1, \ldots, k, j \neq i$. This yields $k$ validation errors $E_{v 1}, \ldots, E_{v k}$ for the $k$ models $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{k}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{v i}=\frac{1}{\left|Z_{i}\right|} \sum_{(x, y) \in Z_{i}}\left\|y-f_{i}(x)\right\|^{2} \tag{6.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

$i=1, \ldots, k$, whose average is called the $k$-fold cross-validation error.

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{v}=\frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=1}^{k} E_{v i} \tag{6.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that this is not the error of one individual model but the average error of $k$ different models obtained with a specific regression method with specific parameters.

Leave one out is a cross-validation scheme where for each model only one single data vector is retained for validation. So, leave one out can be viewed as $n$-fold crossvalidation. Popular cross-validation schemes are two-fold cross-validation, ten-fold cross-validation, and leave one out. In $k$-fold cross-validation, $k$ models are trained and each data vector is used once for validation and $k-1$ times for training. In twofold cross-validation, two models are trained and each data vector is used once for validation and once for training. In leave one out, $n$ models are trained and each data vector is used once for validation and $n-1$ times for training.

The validation error is typically larger that the training error, $E_{v}>E_{t}$, because the models are trained with the training data and not with the validation data. If $d$ denotes the number of free model parameters, for example the number of MLP edge weights, then the relation between the training error and the validation error can be estimated in various ways [1,2] as

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{v} \approx \frac{1+d / n}{1-d / n} E_{t} \tag{6.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& E_{v} \approx(1+2 d / n) E_{t}  \tag{6.62}\\
& E_{v} \approx \frac{1}{(1-d / n)^{2}} E_{t} \tag{6.63}
\end{align*}
$$

Models are good generalizations when the validation error is close to the training error, $E_{v} \approx E_{t}$. For the three estimates above this requires $d \ll n$. Suitable values of $d$ may be obtained by either starting with low $d$ and successively increasing $d$ until training and validation errors start to diverge too much, or by starting with high $d$ and successively decreasing $d$ until training and validation errors become similar.

A well trained and validated regression model may be interpreted as a good approximation of the underlying function between inputs and outputs. If the validation error is low, then inputs and outputs correlate well. If the validation error is high, then inputs and outputs do not correlate well. Thus, the inverse validation error can be viewed as a correlation measure between the model inputs and outputs, as an alternative to the correlation measures presented in the previous chapter.

### 6.7 Feature Selection

In the previous sections we assumed that the output features in $Y$ depend on all input features in $X$, and therefore all features in $X$ were considered for the (regression) model. However, in many applications this is not the case. Some of the features in $X$ may be irrelevant. Taking into account irrelevant features may lead to unneccessarily high model complexity (too many model parameters and high computational effort for training) or even to lower model performance, for example if the model overfits because of irrelevant features. Therefore, in many data analysis tasks it is useful to select and use only the relevant features, not only in regression but also in forecasting, classification and clustering. In chapter 8 we will present a decision tree approach that implicitly finds the most relevant features for a given classification task. However, any regression, forecasting, classification and clustering method can be combined with feature selection. To do so, subsets of the available features are used for model building and are successively adapted according to the model performance until a satisfactory feature subset is found. A simple feature selection approach starts with the complete set of features and successively removes the least relevant feature until the model performance falls below a given threshold. The reverse approach starts with an empty feature set and successively adds the most relevant feature until no significant model improvement can be achieved. Because of possibly complex interdependencies between the features both approaches may find bad solutions. For example, if two features individually have a low relevance but jointly have a high relevance, then the second approach will not take into account either of them. This drawback can be reduced by combining both approaches where the feature sets are alternatingly extended and reduced. To find a set of features which are optimal in some well-defined sense, all possible combinations need to be evaluated. This is not feasible due to the exponential effort. Many stochastic
methods have been proposed to approximate an optimal feature selection, including meta-heuristics such as simulated annealing [7], evolutionary algorithms [12], or swarm intelligence [13]. Notice that feature selection yields an (axis-parallel) projection of the data (see chapter 4).

## Problems

6.1. Compute the covariance matrix and the linear regression models for the data set $X=\{(1,1),(2,2),(3,3),(4,4),(5,5)\}$.
6.2. Now change the last point in $X$ from $(5,5)$ to $(5,0)$. Compute again the covariance matrix and the linear regression models.
6.3. How do you explain the different results?
6.4. Explain the difference between correlation and regression.
6.5. What does a small training error and a large validation error indicate?

## References

1. H. Akaike. A new look at the statistical model identification. IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control, AC-19:716-723, 1974.
2. P. Craven and G. Wahba. Smoothing noisy data with spline functions: Estimating the correct degree of smoothing by the method of generalized cross-validation. Numerical Mathematics, 31:377-403, 1979.
3. R. Hecht-Nielsen. Neurocomputing. Addison-Wesley, 1990.
4. K. Hornik, M. Stinchcombe, and H. White. Multilayer feedforward networks are universal approximators. Neural Networks, 2(5):359-366, 1989.
5. P. J. Huber. Robust Statistics. Wiley, New York, 2nd edition, 2009.
6. A. N. Kolmogorov. On the representation of continuous functions of many variables by superposition of continuous functions of one variable and addition. Doklady Akademii Nauk SSSR, 144:679-681, 1957.
7. R. Meiria and J. Zahavi. Using simulated annealing to optimize the feature selection problem in marketing applications. European Journal of Operational Research, 171(3):842-858, 2006.
8. J. Moody and C. Darken. Fast learning in networks of locally-tuned processing units. Neural Computation, 1:281-294, 1989.
9. F. Rosenblatt. The perceptron: A probabilistic model for information storage and organization in the brain. Psychological Reviews, 65:386-408, 1958.
10. P. J. Rousseeuw and A. M. Leroy. Robust Regression and Outlier Detection. Wiley, New York, 1987.
11. D. E. Rumelhart, G. E. Hinton, and R. J. Williams. Learning internal representations by error backpropagation. In D. E. Rumelhart and J. L. McClelland, editors, Parallel Distributed Processing. Explorations in the Microstructure of Cognition, volume 1, pages 318-362. MIT Press, Cambridge, 1986.
12. W. Siedlecki and J. Sklansky. A note on genetic algorithms for large-scale feature selection. Pattern Recognition Letters, 10(5):335-347, 1989.
13. S. Vieira, J. M. Sousa, and T. A. Runkler. Multi-criteria ant feature selection using fuzzy classifiers. In C. A. Coello Coello, S. Dehuri, and S. Ghosh, editors, Swarm Intelligence for Multi-objective Problems in Data Mining, pages 19-36. Springer, 2009.
14. P. J. Werbos. The Roots of Backpropagation: From Ordered Derivatives to Neural Networks and Political Forecasting (Adaptive and Learning Systems for Signal Processing, Communications and Control Series). Wiley-Interscience, 1994.

## Chapter 7 <br> Forecasting


#### Abstract

For forecasting future values of a time series we imagine that the time series is generated by a (possibly noisy) deterministic process such as a Mealy or a Moore machine. This leads to recurrent or auto-regressive models. Building forecasting models is essentially a regression task. The training data sets for forecasting models are generated by finite unfolding in time. Popular linear forecasting models are auto-regressive models (AR) and generalized AR models with moving average (ARMA), with integral terms (ARIMA), or with local regression (ARMAX). Popular nonlinear forecasting models are recurrent neural networks.


### 7.1 Finite State Machines

Sequences of data play an important role in data analysis. In chapter 2 we presented relations for sequential data and sampling schemes for continuous signals. In chapter 3 we showed how sequences can be preprocessed by filtering. And in chapter 4 we illustrated how sequential data can be analyzed and visualized using spectral analysis. In data analysis we not only preprocess, visualize and analyze sequential data but also try to use observed data sequences to produce reliable forecasts of future data.

Finding an appropriate forecasting model begins with the assumption that the sequence is generated by a dynamic feedback system [2] with an input $x \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$, a hidden state $s \in \mathbb{R}^{h}$, and an output $y \in \mathbb{R}^{q}$. Notice the similarity to the three-layer MLP architecture presented in the previous chapter. At each time step $k$ such a dynamic feedback system can be described by a state equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{k}=f_{s}\left(s_{k-1}, x_{k}\right) \tag{7.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and an output equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=f_{y}\left(s_{k}, x_{k}\right) \tag{7.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The top left view of Fig. 7.1 shows a block diagram of such a system. If the set


Fig. 7.1 Finite state machines: Mealy machine (top left), Moore machine (top right), unfolded Moore machine (bottom)
of states that can be reached in a such system is finite, we call the system a finite state machine, for example when $s \in\{0,1\}^{r}, r \in\{1,2, \ldots\}$. Equations (7.1) and (7.2) describe a so-called Mealy machine [3]. Special cases of Mealy machines are Moore machines [4], where the output only depends on the state but not the current input. So a Moore machine is described by a state equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{k}=f_{s}\left(s_{k-1}, x_{k}\right) \tag{7.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and an output equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=f_{y}\left(s_{k}\right) \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

The top right view of Fig. 7.1 shows a block diagram of a Moore machine. Any Mealy machine can be translated into an equivalent Moore machine and vice versa. To realize a given behavior, Mealy machines usually require a smaller state space. However, Moore machines are often easier to design and their behavior is easier to analyze. Without loss of generality we will restrict here to Moore machines.

### 7.2 Recurrent Models

Forecasting uses the observed input and output sequences $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right\}$ to predict the expected output sequence $\left\{y_{n+1}, \ldots, y_{n+q}\right\}$ without knowing the expected input sequence $\left\{x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+q}\right\}$. To build a forecasting model we have to find functions $f_{s}$ and $f_{y}$ that approximate the observed data in some well-
defined sense, for example by minimizing the average quadratic error between the observations $y_{k}$ and the predicted values $y_{k}^{\prime}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(y_{k}-y_{k}^{\prime}\right)^{2} \tag{7.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This leads to a regression problem (just as described in the previous chapter), where the functions $f_{s}$ and $f_{y}$ are estimated from the quadruples $\left(x_{k}, s_{k-1}, s_{k}, y_{k}\right)$, $k=1, \ldots, n$. The internal states $s$ are usually unknown and have to be estimated from the observed data. Each state $s_{k}$ depends on the (also unknown) previous states $s_{0}, \ldots, s_{k-1}$. The previous states were influenced by the input values $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k-1}$ via the function $f_{s}$ and have impacted the output values $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k-1}$ via the function $f_{y}$. We can therefore assume that $s_{k}$ can be estimated from $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k-1}$ and $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k-1}$. This assumption yields a state free model that can be interpreted as an approximation of a Moore machine:

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=f_{k}\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k-1}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k-1}\right), \quad k=2, \ldots, n \tag{7.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The functions $f_{2}, \ldots, f_{n}$ can not be found by regression because at each time step $k$ only a single data tuple is available. This can be overcome when the state is not estimated from all previous input and output values but only from the last $m$ of these. The corresponding model is

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=f\left(y_{k-m}, \ldots, y_{k-1}, x_{k-m}, \ldots, x_{k-1}\right), \quad k=m+1, \ldots, n \tag{7.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The function $f$ can be estimated from $n-m$ data tuples. For example, for $m=3$ and $n=8$ these $8-3=5$ tuples are

$$
\begin{align*}
& y_{4}=f\left(y_{1}, y_{2}, y_{3}, x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}\right)  \tag{7.8}\\
& y_{5}=f\left(y_{2}, y_{3}, y_{4}, x_{2}, x_{3}, x_{4}\right)  \tag{7.9}\\
& y_{6}=f\left(y_{3}, y_{4}, y_{5}, x_{3}, x_{4}, x_{5}\right)  \tag{7.10}\\
& y_{7}=f\left(y_{4}, y_{5}, y_{6}, x_{4}, x_{5}, x_{6}\right)  \tag{7.11}\\
& y_{8}=f\left(y_{5}, y_{6}, y_{7}, x_{5}, x_{6}, x_{7}\right) \tag{7.12}
\end{align*}
$$

The values $x_{m}, \ldots, x_{n-m}$ and $y_{m+1}, \ldots, y_{n-m}\left(x_{3}, x_{4}, x_{5}, y_{4}, y_{5}\right.$ in this example) occur most, so these influence the forecasting model most. The number of considered time steps $m$ should not be too small to make sure that the hidden states can be estimated well, and it should not be too large to make sure that the number of data tuples is sufficient for a good regression model. Fig. 7.2 illustrates the algorithm to build state free forecasting models. This algorithm reduces forecasting to a regression problem. Any regression method may be used here, for example the methods illustrated in the previous chapter. Suitable values for the parameter $m$ and for the parameters of the chosen regression model can be determined by cross-validation (see previous chapter). The forecasting model yields the model-based estimates of the (already observed) outputs $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}$, and it can be used to produce forecasts of the future

1. input data sets $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}, Y=\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{q}$, parameter $m \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$
2. construct regression data set $Z$ according to (7.7)
3. estimate $f$ from $Z$ using a suitable regression method
4. output $f$

Fig. 7.2 State free forecasting.
outputs $y_{n+1}, y_{n+2}, \ldots$ if the future inputs $x_{n+1}, x_{n+2}, \ldots$ are known or can at least be estimated. A simple estimation is the average of the previously observed inputs.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} x_{j}, \quad k=n+1, n+2, \ldots \tag{7.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 7.3 Autoregressive Models

The problem of unknown future inputs can be avoided by models that do not consider the inputs at all, the so-called auto-regressive models.

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{k}=f\left(y_{k-m}, \ldots, y_{k-1}\right), \quad k=m+1, \ldots, n \tag{7.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

For example, for $m=3$ and $n=8$ the regression tuples are

$$
\begin{align*}
& y_{4}=f\left(y_{1}, y_{2}, y_{3}\right)  \tag{7.15}\\
& y_{5}=f\left(y_{2}, y_{3}, y_{4}\right)  \tag{7.16}\\
& y_{6}=f\left(y_{3}, y_{4}, y_{5}\right)  \tag{7.17}\\
& y_{7}=f\left(y_{4}, y_{5}, y_{6}\right)  \tag{7.18}\\
& y_{8}=f\left(y_{5}, y_{6}, y_{7}\right) \tag{7.19}
\end{align*}
$$

For linear regression such autoregressive models are called linear autoregressive (AR) models [1]. Such linear models can be estimated very efficiently but they yield suboptimal results if the underlying relations are highly nonlinear. To obtain better results for nonlinear systems, linear AR models use moving averages (ARMA models), integral terms (ARIMA models), or local regression (ARMAX models). More accurate nonlinear forecasting models can be found with nonlinear regression, for example using neural networks. A successful approach for forecasting with recurrent neural networks uses the scheme of the Moore machine (7.3),(7.4) with finite unfolding as in the bottom view of Fig. 7.1, neural regression of $f_{s}$ and $f_{y}$, and represents the unknown state vectors by free variables that are determined in the training phase [5].

## Problems

7.1. Construct the data tuples for an autoregressive forecasting model with a time horizon of $m=2$ for the time series $x=\{1,2,3,5,8\}$.
7.2. Which forecasting model do you obtain by linear regression?
7.3. Which forecast does this model produce?

## References

1. G. E. P. Box, G. M. Jenkins, and G. C. Reinsel. Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control. Prentice Hall, 4th edition, 2008.
2. J E. Hopcroft, R. Motwani, and J. D. Ullman. Introduction to Automata Theory, Languages, and Computation. Addison Wesley, 3rd edition, 2006.
3. G. H. Mealy. A method for synthesizing sequential circuits. Bell System Technology Journal, 34:1045-1079, September 1955.
4. E. F. Moore. Gedankenexperiments on sequential machines. In W. R. Ashby, C. E. Shannon, and J. McCarthy, editors, Automata studies, pages 129-156. Princeton University Press, 1956.
5. H. G. Zimmermann and R. Neuneier. Modeling dynamical systems by recurrent neural networks. In International Conference on Data Mining, pages 557-566, Cambridge, 2000.

## Chapter 8 <br> Classification


#### Abstract

Classification is supervised learning that uses labeled data to assign objects to classes. We distinguish false positive and false negative errors and define numerous indicators to quantify classifier performance. Pairs of indicators are considered to assess classification performance. We illustrate this with the receiver operating characteristic and the precision recall diagram. Several different classifiers with specific features and drawbacks are presented in detail: the naive Bayes classifier, linear discriminant analysis, the support vector machine (SVM) using the kernel trick, nearest neighbor classifiers, learning vector quantification, and hierarchical classification using regression trees.


### 8.1 Classification Criteria

The previous chapters have considered two types of data: feature data

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p} \tag{8.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and pairs of input and output features

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}\right)\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p+q} \tag{8.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

This chapter considers data of objects that are assigned to $c$ classes, $c \in\{2,3, \ldots\}$. For example, a medical examination yields features of a patient such as body temperature or blood pressure that can be used to determine whether the patient is healthy or sick, i.e. whether the patient can be assigned to the class of healthy or sick patients. The class assignment of a feature data set can be specified by a class vector $y \subset\{1, \ldots, c\}$. The tuples of feature data and class assignments form a labeled feature data set

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}\right)\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p} \times\{1, \ldots, c\} \tag{8.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that in classification, we denote $y_{k} \in\{1, \ldots, c\}$ as the class label, and in regression, we denote $y_{k} \in \mathbb{R}^{q}$ as the output.

We assume a systematic relation between the feature vectors and classes of the objects described by a labeled feature data set, and that the objects are representative for their classes. Based on this assumption we use the data to model classes and design classifiers that are able to classify previously unknown objects based on their feature vectors. For example, the data set may indicate that patients with a high body temperature belong to the class of sick patients, so a new patient with a high body temperature would also be classified as sick. So, based on a labeled feature data set, we look for a classifier function $f: \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow\{1, \ldots, c\}$ that yields a class $y$ for a given feature vector $x$. Constructing a classifier function from data is called classifier design, and the application of this function is called classification [9, 21]. Classifier design is similar to regression (chapter 6). We partition the available data into training and validation data, train the classifiers with the training data and validate with the validation data. The goal is to obtain good classification performance on the validation data.

To assess classifier performance we consider a selected class, for example the class of sick patients. An ideal classifier classifies all healthy patients as healthy and all sick patients as sick. A incorrect classification can either mean that a healthy patient is classified as sick, or that a sick patient is classified as healthy. These two types of classification errors may have significantly different meanings and effects and are therefore distinguished. Each classification result belongs to one of the following four cases [2, 15]:

1. true positive (TP): $y=i, f(x)=i$
(a sick patient is classified as sick)
2. true negative (TN): $y \neq i, f(x) \neq i$
(a healthy patient is classified as healthy)
3. false positive (FP): $y \neq i, f(x)=i$
(a healthy patient is classified as sick)
4. false negative (FN): $y=i, f(x) \neq i$
(a sick patient is classified as healthy)
FP is also called type I error or error of the first kind. FN is also called type II error or error of the second kind. Based on the TP, TN, FP, and FN counts of a training or validation data set, various classification performance criteria are frequently used:

- total number of classifications $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{TP}+\mathrm{TN}+\mathrm{FP}+\mathrm{FN}$
- true classifications $\mathrm{T}=\mathrm{TP}+\mathrm{TN}$
(number of correctly classified patients)
- false classifications $\mathrm{F}=\mathrm{FP}+\mathrm{FN}$
(number of incorrectly classified patients)
- relevance $\mathrm{R}=\mathrm{TP}+\mathrm{FN}$
(number of sick patients)
- irrelevance $\mathrm{I}=\mathrm{FP}+\mathrm{TN}$
(number of healthy patients)
- positivity $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{TP}+\mathrm{FP}$
(number of patients that are classified as sick)
- negativity $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{TN}+\mathrm{FN}$
(number of patients that are classified as healthy)
- true classification rate or accuracy T/n
(probability that a patient is correctly classified)
- false classification rate F/n
(probability that a patient is incorrectly classified)
- true positive rate or sensitivity or recall or hit rate $\mathrm{TPR}=\mathrm{TP} / \mathrm{R}$
(probability that a sick patient is classified as sick)
- true negative rate or specificity $\mathrm{TNR}=\mathrm{TN} / \mathrm{I}$
(probability that a healthy patient is classified as healthy)
- false positive rate or fall out or false alarm rate $\mathrm{FPR}=\mathrm{FP} / \mathrm{I}$
(probability that a healthy patient is classified as sick)
- false negative rate $\mathrm{FNR}=\mathrm{FN} / \mathrm{R}$
(probability that a sick patient is classified as healthy)
- positive predictive value or precision $\mathrm{TP} / \mathrm{P}$
(probability that a sick classified patient is sick)
- negative predictive value TN/N
(probability that a healthy classified patient is healthy)
- negative false classification rate FN/N
(probability that a healthy classified patient is sick)
- positive false classification rate $\mathrm{FP} / \mathrm{P}$
(probability that a sick classified patient is healthy)
None of these criteria alone is sufficient to assess the performance of a classifier. Good values of a single criterion can be obtained by trivial classifiers. For example, a true positive rate of $100 \%$ (very good) might be achieved by a trivial classifier that produces a positive classification for any arbitrary feature vector. However, such a trivial classifier can also achieve a false positive rate of $100 \%$ (very bad). So classifier performance is usually assessed by considering pairs of classification criteria.

One example for such an approach is the receiver operating characteristic $(R O C)$, a scatter plot of the true positive rate (TPR) and the false positive rate (FPR). Fig. 8.1 (left) shows an example of an ROC diagram. The (training or recall) performance of a certain classifier on a certain data set is displayed as a point in the ROC diagram. The ROC diagram can be used for different purposes, for example to compare training and recall performance, the performance of different classifiers, the effect of different parameter settings, or the performance on different data sets. An optimal classifier yields $100 \%$ TPR and $0 \%$ FPR which corresponds to the top left corner of the ROC diagram. Therefore a good classification yields a point close to the top left corner of the ROC diagram. The trivial always positive classifier discussed above yields $100 \%$ TPR and $100 \%$ FPR (top right corner), and the trivial always negative classifier yields $0 \%$ TPR and $0 \%$ FPR (bottom left corner). A classifier that always produces the false result yields $0 \%$ TPR and $100 \%$ FPR (bottom right corner). This could be converted to an optimal classifier by just inverting the


Fig. 8.1 Receiver operating characteristic and precision recall diagram.
classification result. For any classification, inverting the classification result will reflect the corresponding point in the ROC diagram along the main diagonal (dashed line). So any classifier that yields a point below the main diagonal can be improved by inverting the classification result. Hence, ROC diagrams usually only display points above the main diagonal.

Another example for assessing classifier performance by considering a pair of classification criteria is the precision recall $(P R)$ diagram which displays the precision (or positive predictive value) TP/P versus the recall (true positive rate, sensitivity, or hit rate) TPR. The right view of Fig. 8.1 shows an example of a PR diagram. A high precision can usually be achieved for a low recall, i.e. it is easy to build a classifier that correctly classifies only a few sick patients. A higher recall can usually be obtained only with a lower precision. A good classifier maintains a high precision with a high recall. The intersection of the PR curve with the main diagonal is called precision recall $(P R)$ breakeven point which is considered an important classification criterion, so a good classifier should have a high PR breakeven point. A detailed discussion and comparison of ROC and PR diagrams can be found in [8].

The following sections present some important families of classifiers and their specific advantages and drawbacks: probabilistic, linear, prototype based, and hierarchical classifiers (Fig. 8.2).

### 8.2 Naive Bayes Classifier

The naive Bayes classifier is a probabilistic classifier based on Bayes's theorem [3]: Let $A$ and $B$ denote two events, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(A \mid B) \cdot p(B)=p(B \mid A) \cdot p(A) \tag{8.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the event $A$ can be decomposed into the disjoint events $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{c}, p\left(A_{i}\right)>0$, $i=1, \ldots, c$, then


Fig. 8.2 Some important classifier schemes.

$$
\begin{equation*}
p\left(A_{i} \mid B\right)=\frac{p\left(A_{i}\right) \cdot p\left(B \mid A_{i}\right)}{\sum_{j=1}^{c} P\left(A_{j}\right) \cdot P\left(B \mid A_{j}\right)} \tag{8.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The relevant events considered in classification are "object belongs to class $i$ ", or more briefly, just " $i$ ", and "object has the feature vector $x$ ", or " $x$ ". Replacing $A_{i}, A_{j}$ and $B$ in (8.5) by these events yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(i \mid x)=\frac{p(i) \cdot p(x \mid i)}{\sum_{j=1}^{c} p(j) \cdot p(x \mid j)} \tag{8.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the $p$ features in $x$ are statistically independent, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(x \mid i)=\prod_{k=1}^{p} p\left(x^{(k)} \mid i\right) \tag{8.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Inserting this into (8.6) yields the classification probabilities of the naive Bayes classifier.

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(i \mid x)=\frac{p(i) \cdot \prod_{k=1}^{p} p\left(x^{(k)} \mid i\right)}{\sum_{j=1}^{c} p(j) \cdot \prod_{k=1}^{p} p\left(x^{(k)} \mid j\right)} \tag{8.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Given a labeled feature data set $Z=\left\{\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, y_{n}\right)\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p} \times\{1, \ldots, c\}$, the prior probabilities can be estimated from the observed frequencies: $p(i)$ is the relative frequency of class $y=i, i=1, \ldots, c$, and the probabilities $p\left(x^{(k)} \mid i\right)$ are the relative frequencies of feature $x^{(k)}$ in class $y=i, i=1, \ldots, c, k=1, \ldots, p$. For a given feature vector $x$, equation (8.8) yields the classification probabilities for each class. For a deterministic classification the class with the highest probability is selected.

As an example for naive Bayes classification consider a group of students taking an exam. Some of the students went to class regularly, and the others didn't. Some of

Table 8.1 Naive Bayes classifier: data of the student example.

|  | $\begin{array}{c}\text { number of } \\ \text { students who }\end{array}$ |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | passed |  |
| failed |  |  |
| went to class | 21 |  |
| did not go to class | 1 |  |
|  | 3 |  |
| studied material | 16 |  |
| did not study material | 6 |  |$) 5$.

the students studied the course material, and the others didn't. Some of the students passed the exam, and the others didn't. The corresponding numbers of students are given in Table 8.1. We want to find the probability that a student will pass the exam, if he went to class regularly and studied the course material. From the numbers in Table 8.1 we can compute the probabilities

$$
\begin{align*}
p(\text { went to class } \mid \text { passed }) & =\frac{21}{21+1}=\frac{21}{22}  \tag{8.9}\\
p(\text { studied material } \mid \text { passed }) & =\frac{16}{16+6}=\frac{16}{22}  \tag{8.10}\\
\Rightarrow p(x \mid \text { passed }) & =\frac{21 \cdot 16}{22 \cdot 22}=\frac{84}{121}  \tag{8.11}\\
p(\text { went to class } \mid \text { failed }) & =\frac{4}{4+3}=\frac{4}{7}  \tag{8.12}\\
p(\text { studied material } \mid \text { failed }) & =\frac{2}{2+5}=\frac{2}{7}  \tag{8.13}\\
\Rightarrow p(x \mid \text { failed }) & =\frac{4 \cdot 2}{7 \cdot 7}=\frac{8}{49}  \tag{8.14}\\
p(\text { passed }) & =\frac{22}{22+7}=\frac{22}{29}  \tag{8.15}\\
p(\text { failed }) & =\frac{7}{22+7}=\frac{7}{29}  \tag{8.16}\\
p(\text { passed }) \cdot p(x \mid \text { passed }) & =\frac{22}{29} \cdot \frac{84}{121}=\frac{168}{319}  \tag{8.17}\\
p(\text { failed }) \cdot p(x \mid \text { failed }) & =\frac{7}{29} \cdot \frac{8}{49}=\frac{8}{203}  \tag{8.18}\\
\Rightarrow p(\text { passed } \mid x) & =\frac{\frac{168}{319}}{\frac{168}{319}+\frac{8}{203}}  \tag{8.19}\\
=\frac{147}{168 \cdot 203+8 \cdot 319}=\frac{147}{158} & \approx 93 \% \tag{8.20}
\end{align*}
$$

So, a student who went to class regularly and studied the course material will pass with a probability of $93 \%$, and a deterministic naive Bayes classifier will yield "passed" for this student, and all other students with the same history. Table 8.2

Table 8.2 Naive Bayes classifier: classifier function for the student example.

|  |  | probability for |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | passed | failed | classification |
| went to class | studied material | $93 \%$ | $7 \%$ | passed |
| went to class | did not study material | $67 \%$ | $33 \%$ | passed |
| did not go to class | studied material | $46 \%$ | $54 \%$ | failed |
| did not go to class | did not study material | $11 \%$ | $89 \%$ | failed |



Fig. 8.3 Linear discriminant based on the perpendicular bisector of the line joining the means (left, dotted line) and linear discriminant analysis (right, dashed line).
shows the classifier probabilities and the values of the classifier function for all four possible student histories.

The major advantages of the naive Bayes classifier are its efficiency, because the training data have to be evaluated only once (to compute the relative frequencies), and missing data can be simply ignored. The major disadvantages are that the features must be statistically independent, which is usually not the case in real-world data, and that the features must be discrete. Continuous features may be used in the naive Bayes classifier after discretization, as described in chapters 4 (histograms) and 5 (chi-square test).

### 8.3 Linear Discriminant Analysis

The left view of Fig. 8.3 shows a scatter plot of a two-dimensional real-valued data set with two classes. The feature vectors of class 1 and 2 are shown as crosses and circles, respectively. Most points above the dotted line belong to class one (crosses), and most points below the dotted line belong to class two (circles). So the dotted line can be used as a class border, a so-called discriminant line, written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
w \cdot x^{T}+b=0, \quad w \in \mathbb{R}^{p}, \quad b \in \mathbb{R} \tag{8.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

For higher dimensions this denotes a discriminant plane $(p=3)$ or a discriminant hyperplane $(p>3)$. Without loss of generality we illustrate only two-dimensional
linear discrimination here $(p=2)$. For a given data set $Z$, linear discriminant analysis finds a discriminant line (plane or hyperplane) by finding the parameters $w$ and $b$ that are optimal with respect to some well-defined criterion. For simplicity we restrict to two classes here. Multiple classes can be realized by multiple discriminant lines (planes or hyperplanes) or by combining several two-class classifiers.

The data in the left view of Fig. 8.3 are approximately Gaussian with means $\mu_{1}$, $\mu_{2}$ and approximately equal standard deviations $\sigma_{1} \approx \sigma_{2}$. In this case, for symmetry reasons a suitable discriminant line is the perpendicular bisector of the line joining the two means, so the parameters of the discriminant line are

$$
\begin{align*}
w & =\mu_{1}-\mu_{2}  \tag{8.22}\\
b & =-w \cdot \frac{\mu_{1}^{T}+\mu_{2}^{T}}{2} \tag{8.23}
\end{align*}
$$

The dotted line in the left view of Fig. 8.3 is computed using these equations.
The right view of Fig. 8.3 shows two classes with the same means $\mu_{1}$ and $\mu_{2}$ as in the left view, but the horizontal standard deviations are larger than the vertical standard deviations. The dotted line in the right view of Fig. 8.3 computed by (8.22) and (8.23) does not appropriately separate the classes in this case. Linear discriminant analysis is related to principal component analysis (chapter 4). If we map the data to an orthogonal to the dotted line, then we obtain one-dimensional projections where the classes are quite well separated for the data in Fig. 8.3 (left), and not well separated for the data in Fig. 8.3 (right). Well separable means that in the projection the within-class variance

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{w}=\sum_{i=1}^{c} \sum_{y_{k}=i}\left(x_{k}-\mu_{i}\right)^{T}\left(x_{k}-\mu_{i}\right) \tag{8.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

is low, and the between-class variance

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{b}=\sum_{i=1}^{c}\left(\mu_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{T}\left(\mu_{i}-\bar{x}\right) \tag{8.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

is high. Therefore, Fisher's linear discriminant analysis [10] (that was originally used to analyze the Iris data set, see chapter 2) maximizes the quotient

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\frac{w^{T} \cdot v_{b} \cdot w}{w^{T} \cdot v_{w} \cdot w} \tag{8.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similar to principal component analysis, this maximization yields the eigen problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(v_{b}^{-1} v_{w}\right) \cdot w=\lambda \cdot w \tag{8.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

that can be solved for $w$, and then $b$ can be computed by (8.23). For $c=2$ we can simplify (8.25) to

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{b}=\left(\mu_{1}-\mu_{2}\right)^{T}\left(\mu_{1}-\mu_{2}\right) \tag{8.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

and obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=v_{w}^{-1}\left(\mu_{1}-\mu_{2}\right) \tag{8.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

The dashed linear discriminant line in Fig. 8.3 (right) is computed using (8.29) and (8.23). It separates the classes much better than the dotted line.

The major advantages of linear discriminant analysis are its efficiency and its suitability for correlated features. The major disadvantage is that it assumes an approximately Gaussian distribution of the features and is not suited for nonlinear class borders.

### 8.4 Support Vector Machine

A support vector machine (SVM) [19] is also based on linear class borders, but with a margin around the discriminant hyperplane. For two classes, the SVM requires that

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
w \cdot x_{k}^{T}+b \geq+1 & \text { if } y_{k}=1 \\
w \cdot x_{k}^{T}+b \leq-1 & \text { if } y_{k}=2 \tag{8.31}
\end{array}
$$

where $b>0$ is the margin parameter. If these constraints possess multiple (possibly infinitely many) solutions, then the SVM finds the solution with minimal

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\frac{1}{2}\|w\|^{2} \tag{8.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

For closely adjacent or even overlapping classes no class border can satisfy (8.30) and (8.31), so these conditions are relaxed to

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
w \cdot x_{k}^{T}+b \geq+1-\xi_{k} & \text { if } y_{k}=1 \\
w \cdot x_{k}^{T}+b \leq-1+\xi_{k} & \text { if } y_{k}=2 \tag{8.34}
\end{array}
$$

with the slack variables $\xi_{1}, \ldots, \xi_{n}$. To keep the slack variables low, a penalty term is added to the cost function (8.32) which yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\frac{1}{2}\|w\|^{2}+\gamma \cdot \sum_{k=1}^{n} \xi_{k}, \quad \gamma>0 \tag{8.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

The SVM parameters $w$ and $b$ can be found by minimizing (8.35) under the constraints (8.33) and (8.34). The usual method for solving this constrained optimization problem is quadratic programming. See the references in the appendix for the details of this method.

A modification of this approach represents the normal vector of the discriminant hyperplane as a linear combination of the training data

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=\sum_{y_{j}=1} \alpha_{j} x_{j}-\sum_{y_{j}=2} \alpha_{j} x_{j} \tag{8.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

and then finds the optimal parameters $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$. The classification rule then reads

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\sum_{y_{j}=1} \alpha_{j} x_{j} x_{k}^{T}-\sum_{y_{j}=2} \alpha_{j} x_{j} x_{k}^{T}+b \geq+1-\xi_{k} & \text { if } y_{k}=1 \\
\sum_{y_{j}=1} \alpha_{j} x_{j} x_{k}^{T}-\sum_{y_{j}=2} \alpha_{j} x_{j} x_{k}^{T}+b \leq-1+\xi_{k} & \text { if } y_{k}=2 \tag{8.38}
\end{array}
$$

This modification increases the number of free parameters from $p+1$ to $n+1$, which makes the optimization harder, but allows the application of the so-called kernel trick which extends the SVM to nonlinear class borders. The basic idea which underlies the kernel trick is to map a data set $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$ to a higherdimensional data set $X^{\prime}=\left\{x_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, x_{n}^{\prime}\right\} \in \mathbb{R}^{q}, q>p$, so that the structure of the data in $X^{\prime}$ is more suitable than the structure in $X$. For the SVM we use the kernel trick to map classes with nonlinear class borders in $X$ to classes with (approximately) linear class borders in $X^{\prime}$ and then use the linear classification approach presented above. In the next chapter we will also present an application of the kernel trick to relational cluster analysis. The mathematical basis of the kernel trick is Mercer's theorem [14] that was first published more than a hundred years ago and has gained a lot of attention in recent years because of its application to the kernel trick. Mercer's theorem states that for any data set $X$ and any kernel function $k: \mathbb{R}^{p} \times \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ there exists a mapping $\varphi: \mathbb{R}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{q}$ so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)=\varphi\left(x_{j}^{\prime}\right) \cdot \varphi\left(x_{k}^{\prime}\right)^{T} \tag{8.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

This means that a mapping from $X$ to $X^{\prime}$ can be implicitly done by replacing scalar products in $X^{\prime}$ by kernel function values in $X$, without explicitly computing $X^{\prime}$. Replacing scalar products in $X^{\prime}$ by kernel functions in $X$ is called the kernel trick. Some frequently used kernel functions are

- linear kernel

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)=x_{j} \cdot x_{k}^{T} \tag{8.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

- polynomial kernel

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)=\left(x_{j} \cdot x_{k}^{T}\right)^{d}, \quad d \in\{2,3, \ldots\} \tag{8.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Gaussian kernel

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)=e^{-\frac{\left\|x_{j}-x_{k}\right\|^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}}, \quad \sigma>0 \tag{8.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

- hyperbolic tangent kernel

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)=1-\tanh \frac{\left\|x_{j}-x_{k}\right\|^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}, \quad \sigma>0 \tag{8.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

- radial basis function (RBF) kernel [16]

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)=f\left(\left\|x_{j}-x_{k}\right\|\right) \tag{8.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Gaussian and hyperbolic tangent kernels are special cases of the RBF kernel. We apply the kernel trick to (8.37) and (8.38), and finally obtain the SVM classifier rule

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sum_{y_{j}=1} \alpha_{j} k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)-\sum_{y_{j}=2} \alpha_{j} k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)+b \geq+1-\xi_{k} \quad \text { if } y_{k}=1  \tag{8.45}\\
& \sum_{y_{j}=1} \alpha_{j} k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)-\sum_{y_{j}=2} \alpha_{j} k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)+b \leq-1+\xi_{k} \quad \text { if } y_{k}=2 \tag{8.46}
\end{align*}
$$

The major advantage of the SVM is that it can find nonlinear class borders. The major disadvantage is that it requires to solve a very high-dimensional optimization problem with nonlinear constraints that is computationally relatively expensive.

### 8.5 Nearest Neighbor Classifier

A much simpler classifier method is the nearest neighbor classifier [20] which assigns an object with a given feature vector to the class of the training object with the most similar feature vector. More formally, for a given feature vector $x$ the nearest neighbor classifier yields class $y_{k}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|x-x_{k}\right\|=\min _{j=1, \ldots, n}\left\|x-x_{j}\right\| \tag{8.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\|$.$\| is a suitable dissimilarity measure, for example the Euclidean or the Ma-$ halanobis distance. For noisy data or overlapping classes the nearest neighbor classifier sometimes yields bad results near the noise data or the class borders. This can be avoided by the $k$-nearest neighbors classifier which not only considers the nearest neighbor but the $k \in\{2, \ldots, n\}$ nearest neighbors and yields the most frequent class of these neighbors. For two classes, ties can be avoided by selecting odd values for $k$. Do not confuse the $k$ as in k -nearest neighbors classifier with the object index $k$.

The nearest neighbor and k-nearest neighbors classifiers do not explicitly design a classifier function but simply store the training data and only evaluate the data on a classification request. This behavior is called lazy learning [1]. The major advantages of the ( k -)nearest neighbor(s) classifier is that no explicit learning is required, that new training data can be easily included, and that arbitrarily nonlinear class borders can be identified. The major disadvantage is the high computational complexity of the classification, because for each classification the dissimilarities with each training feature vector have to be computed.

1. input labeled data set $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}, y=\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right\} \subset\{1, \ldots, c\}$,
class number $c \in\{2, \ldots, n-1\}$, step length $\alpha(t)$
2. initialize $V=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{c}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}, t=1$
3. for $k=1, \ldots, n$
a. find winner prototype $v_{i} \in V$ with

$$
\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\| \leq\left\|x_{k}-v\right\| \quad \forall v \in V
$$

b. move winner prototype

$$
v_{i}= \begin{cases}v_{i}+\alpha(t)\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) & \text { if } y_{k}=i \\ v_{i}-\alpha(t)\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

4. $t=t+1$
5. repeat from (3.) until termination criterion holds
6. output prototypes $V=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{c}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$

Fig. 8.4 Learning vector quantization (training).

### 8.6 Learning Vector Quantization

Many approaches have been suggested to reduce the computational complexity of the nearest neighbor classification, for example by extracting a number of representative feature vectors (so-called prototypes) from the training data set and only computing the dissimilarities with these prototypes. A popular example for these approaches is learning vector quantization (LVQ) [12, 13], a heuristic algorithm that finds one prototype $v_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}, i=1, \ldots, c$, for each class and then assigns a feature vector $x$ to class $i$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|x-v_{i}\right\|=\min _{j=1, \ldots, c}\left\|x-v_{j}\right\| \tag{8.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

In LVQ training the prototypes are first randomly initialized. For each training vector the nearest prototype is moved towards the training vector if it belongs to the same class, and away from the training vector if it belongs to a different class. Notice that this scheme is similar to the exponential filter presented in chapter 3. To enforce convergence the step length is successivey reduced during training. The algorithm passes through the training data set several times until a suitable termination criterion holds. Fig. 8.4 presents the LVQ training algorithm in detail. While LVQ assigns each feature vector to one class, fuzzy learning vector quantization (FLVQ) [7, 4] partially assigns each vector to several classes.

The major advantage of LVQ compared to the (k-)nearest neighbor(s) classifier is that it only has to find the minimum of $c$ and not $n$ dissimilarities for each classification, so it is computationally much cheaper for $c \ll n$. The major disadvantages are that it requires a training phase where each training vector has to be processed several times and that it can only realize quite simple class structures where each


Fig. 8.5 Two functionally equivalent decision trees.
class is represented by only one prototype, the so-called Voronoi diagrams. For more complicated nonlinear class structures, various LVQ extensions have been proposed that use multiple prototypes per class. For an overview see [5].

### 8.7 Decision Trees

All previously presented classifiers consider all $p$ features at a time. This may be disadvantageous if not all features are necessary for a good classification, and if the assessment of the feature values causes a high effort. In medical diagnosis, for example, body temperature or blood pressure are measured for many patients because these features are assessed with low effort and yield significant information about the patient's health, whereas more expensive or time-consuming tests are only performed if needed to support a specific diagnosis. Depending on the already observed feature data, additional features may be ranked by importance, and only a subset of all possible features is used. This scheme leads to a hierarchical structure of the features, as opposed to the flat feature structure of the classifiers presented so far. Hierarchical classifiers can be represented by decision trees [18]. Fig. 8.5 shows two decision trees that represent the same classifier. Both classifiers use the two-dimensional feature vector $x=(l, h)$ of a creature, where $l \in\{0,2,4\}$ is the number of legs, and $h>0$ is the body beight (in meters). Based on these two features the creature is classified as fish, bird, human, cat, or horse, so five classes are considered here. The first decision tree (top view of Fig. 8.5) considers first the feature $l$. For $l=0$ the classification is terminated, the feature $h$ can be ignored, and

Table 8.3 Data set for Fig. 8.5.

| index | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| height $h[\mathrm{~m}]$ | 0.1 | 0.2 | 1.8 | 0.2 | 2.1 | 1.7 | 0.1 | 1.6 |
| legs $l$ | 0 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 2 | 4 | 2 |
| class | fish bird human cat horse human cat human |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

the result is fish. For $l=2$ and $l=4$ the set of possible classes is reduced to bird or human $(l=2)$ or cat or horse $(l=4)$, so the classification is not terminated, but the first feature yielded an information gain, and the class is finally determined by considering the second feature $h$. The second decision tree (bottom view of Fig. 8.5) considers first feature $h$, yields an information gain, and finalizes the classification by considering the second feature $l$.

Both decision trees realize the same classifier but they yield different information gains, depending on the order in which the features are considered. Given the training data $Z=(X, Y)$, the probability for class $k$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(y=k)=\frac{|\{y \in Y \mid y=k\}|}{|Y|} \tag{8.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

so the entropy at the root node is

$$
\begin{align*}
H(Z) & =-\sum_{k=1}^{c} p(y=k) \log _{2} p(y=k)  \tag{8.50}\\
& =-\sum_{k=1}^{c} \frac{|\{y \in Y \mid y=k\}|}{|Y|} \log _{2} \frac{|\{y \in Y \mid y=k\}|}{|Y|} \tag{8.51}
\end{align*}
$$

At the root node we consider feature $x^{(j)}, j \in\{1, \ldots, p\}$, with the discrete range $x^{(j)} \in\left\{1, \ldots, v_{j}\right\}, v_{j} \in\{1,2, \ldots\}$. The probability that $x^{(j)}=k, k=1, \ldots, v_{j}$, is

$$
\begin{equation*}
p\left(x^{(j)}=k\right)=\frac{\left|\left\{x \in X \mid x^{(j)}=k\right\}\right|}{|X|} \tag{8.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

and if $x^{(j)}=k$, then the new entropy is $H\left(Z \mid x^{(j)}=k\right)$. So considering feature $x^{(j)}$ yields an information gain of $H(Z)$ minus the expected value of $H\left(Z \mid x^{(j)}=k\right)$.

$$
\begin{align*}
g_{j} & =H(Z)-\sum_{k=1}^{v_{j}} p\left(x^{(j)}=k\right) \cdot H\left(Z \mid x^{(j)}=k\right)  \tag{8.53}\\
& =H(Z)-\sum_{k=1}^{v_{j}} \frac{\left|\left\{x \in X \mid x^{(j)}=k\right\}\right|}{|X|} H\left(Z \mid x^{(j)}=k\right) \tag{8.54}
\end{align*}
$$

At each node, the decision tree that is optimal with respect to maximum entropy picks the feature that yields the highest information gain. For our example in Fig. 8.5 consider the data sets $X$ and $Y$ given in Table 8.3. The data set contains one fish,
one bird, one horse, three humans, and two cats, so the entropy is

$$
\begin{align*}
H(Z) & =-\frac{1}{8} \log _{2} \frac{1}{8}-\frac{1}{8} \log _{2} \frac{1}{8}-\frac{3}{8} \log _{2} \frac{3}{8}-\frac{2}{8} \log _{2} \frac{2}{8}-\frac{1}{8} \log _{2} \frac{1}{8} \\
& \approx 2.1556 \text { bit } \tag{8.55}
\end{align*}
$$

We first consider the decision tree in the top view of Fig. 8.5, where the feature $l \in\{0,2,4\}$ is considered first. The corresponding conditional entropies are

$$
\begin{align*}
& H(Z \mid l=0)=-1 \log _{2} 1=0  \tag{8.56}\\
& H(Z \mid l=2)=-\frac{1}{4} \log _{2} \frac{1}{4}-\frac{3}{4} \log _{2} \frac{3}{4} \approx 0.8113 \mathrm{bit}  \tag{8.57}\\
& H(Z \mid l=4)=-\frac{1}{3} \log _{2} \frac{1}{3}-\frac{2}{3} \log _{2} \frac{2}{3} \approx 0.9183 \mathrm{bit} \tag{8.58}
\end{align*}
$$

So at the root node the information gain for feature $l$ is

$$
\begin{align*}
g_{l} & =H(Z)-\frac{1}{8} H(Z \mid l=0)-\frac{4}{8} H(Z \mid l=2)-\frac{3}{8} H(Z \mid l=4) \\
& \approx 1.4056 \text { bit } \tag{8.59}
\end{align*}
$$

Next we consider the decision tree in the bottom view of Fig. 8.5, where the feature $h \in\{<1 m,>1 m\}$ is considered first. The corresponding conditional entropies are

$$
\begin{align*}
& H(Z \mid h<1 m)=-\frac{1}{4} \log _{2} \frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{4} \log _{2} \frac{1}{4}-\frac{2}{4} \log _{2} \frac{2}{4} \approx 1.5 \mathrm{bit}  \tag{8.60}\\
& H(Z \mid h>1 m)=-\frac{1}{4} \log _{2} \frac{1}{4}-\frac{3}{4} \log _{2} \frac{3}{4} \approx 0.8113 \mathrm{bit} \tag{8.61}
\end{align*}
$$

So at the root node the information gain for feature $h$ is

$$
\begin{align*}
g_{h} & =H(Z)-\frac{4}{8} H(Z \mid h<1 m)-\frac{4}{8} H(Z \mid h>1 m) \\
& \approx 1 \mathrm{bit} \tag{8.62}
\end{align*}
$$

At the root node, the information gain of feature $l$ is higher than the information gain of feature $h, g_{l}>g_{h}$, so in our example the optimal decision tree is the one shown in the top view of Fig. 8.5.

Optimal decision trees can be constructed using the iterative dichotomiser 3 (ID3) algorithm [17] shown in Fig. 8.6. The recursive procedure is called with the data sets $X$ and $Y$, the root of the decision tree to be constructed, and the set of all feature indices. The recursion stops if all data belong to the same class, because then further branches are not necessary. Otherwise the algorithm computes the information gain for the remaining features and determines the winner feature. The data are partitioned according to the values of the winner feature, and for each nonempty subset a new node is created and appended. For each appended node the algorithm recursively computes the corresponding sub-tree.

- input $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset\left\{1, \ldots, v_{1}\right\} \times \ldots \times\left\{1, \ldots, v_{p}\right\}, Y=\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right\} \subset\{1, \ldots, c\}$ call ID3 $(X, Y$, root, $\{1, \ldots, p\})$
- procedure $\operatorname{ID} 3(X, Y, N, I)$

1. if all $Y$ are equal then break
2. compute information gain $g_{i}(X, Y) \forall i \in I$
3. determine winner feature $j=\operatorname{argmax}\left\{g_{i}(X, Y)\right\}$
4. partition $X, Y$ into $v_{j}$ disjoint subsets

$$
X_{i}=\left\{x_{k} \in X \mid x_{k}^{(j)}=i\right\}, \quad Y_{i}=\left\{y_{k} \in Y \mid x_{k}^{(j)}=i\right\}, \quad i=1, \ldots, v_{j}
$$

5. for $i$ with $X_{i} \neq\{ \}, Y_{i} \neq\{ \}$

- create new node $N_{i}$ and append it to $N$
- call $\operatorname{ID} 3\left(X_{i}, Y_{i}, N_{i}, I \backslash\{j\}\right)$

Fig. 8.6 The ID3 algorithm.

ID3 requires discrete features. An extension of ID3 to real-valued features is the classification and regression tree (CART) algorithm [6] that finds optimal interval borders (like $<1 m$ and $>1 m$ in our example) that maximize the entropy. The chisquare automatic interaction detection (CHAID) algorithm [11] finds the interval borders using a chi-squared test. Other extensions of ID3 such as C4.5 and C5.0 accept real-valued and missing features, use pruning mechanisms to reduce the tree size and enable exportation of the decision tree in form of decision rules.

The major advantages of decision tree classifiers are that they do not necessarily consider all features, which is useful for data with a large number of features, and that they provide additional information about feature ranks. The major disadvantage is that they are either restricted to discrete features, or they work with continuous features but the class borders can only be (at least piecewise) parallel to the coordinate axes, so complicated nonlinear class borders can not be efficiently modeled.

## Problems

8.1. Consider the data sets for two classes $X_{1}=\{(0,0)\}$ and $X_{2}=\{(1,0),(0,1)\}$. Which classification probabilities will a naive Bayes classifier produce for the feature vector $(0,0)$ ?
8.2. Which disciminant line will a support vector machine without kernelization produce for the same data sets?
8.3. Which classification rule will a nearest neighbor classifier produce for the same data sets?

### 8.4. Which classification rule will a 3-nearest neighbors classifier produce for the

 same data sets?8.5. Draw a receiver operating characteristic for these four classifiers, where class 2 is considered positive.

## References

1. D. W. Aha. Editorial: Lazy learning. Artificial Intelligence Review (Special Issue on Lazy Learning), 11(1-5):7-10, June 1997.
2. R. Baeza-Yates and B. Ribeiro-Neto. Modern Information Retrieval. Addison-Wesley, New York, 1999.
3. T. Bayes. An essay towards solving a problem in the doctrine of chances. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, 53:370-418, 1763.
4. J. C. Bezdek and N. R. Pal. Two soft relatives of learning vector quantization. Neural Networks, 8(5):729-743, 1995.
5. J. C. Bezdek, T. R. Reichherzer, G. S. Lim, and Y. Attikiouzel. Multiple-prototype classifier design. IEEE Transactions on Systems, Man, and Cybernetics C, 28(1):67-79, 1998.
6. L. Breiman, J. H. Friedman, R. A. Olsen, and C. J. Stone. Classification and Regression Trees. Chapman \& Hall, New Work, 1984.
7. F. L. Chung and T. Lee. Fuzzy learning vector quantization. In IEEE International Joint Conference on Neural Networks, volume 3, pages 2739-2743, Nagoya, October 1993.
8. J. Davis and M. Goadrich. The relationship between precision-recall and ROC curves. In International Conference on Machine Learning, pages 233-240, 2006.
9. R. O. Duda and P. E. Hart. Pattern Classification and Scene Analysis. Wiley, New York, 1974.
10. R. A. Fisher. The use of multiple measurements in taxonomic problems. Annals of Eugenics, 7:179-188, 1936.
11. G. V. Kass. Significance testing in automatic interaction detection (AID). Applied Statistics, 24:178-189, 1975.
12. T. Kohonen. Learning vector quantization. Neural Networks, 1:303, 1988.
13. T. Kohonen. Improved versions of learning vector quantization. In International Joint Conference on Neural Networks, volume 1, pages 545-550, San Diego, June 1990.
14. J. Mercer. Functions of positive and negative type and their connection with the theory of integral equations. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A, 209:415-446, 1909.
15. J. Neyman and E. S. Pearson. Interpretation of certain test criteria for purposes of statistical inference, part I. Joint Statistical Papers, Cambridge University Press, pages 1-66, 1967.
16. M. J. D. Powell. Radial basis functions for multi-variable interpolation: a review. In IMA Conference on Algorithms for Approximation of Functions and Data, pages 143-167, Shrivenham, 1985.
17. J. R. Quinlan. Induction on decision trees. Machine Learning, 11:81-106, 1986.
18. L. Rokach and O. Maimon. Data Mining with Decision Trees: Theory and Applications. Machine Perception and Artificial Intelligence. World Scientific Publishing Company, 2008.
19. B. Schölkopf and A. J. Smola. Learning with Kernels. MIT Press, Cambridge, 2002.
20. G. Shakhnarovich, T. Darrell, and P. Indyk. Nearest-Neighbor Methods in Learning and Vision: Theory and Practice. Neural Information Processing. MIT Press, 2006.
21. S. Theodoridis and K. Koutroumbas. Pattern Recognition. Academic Press, San Diego, 4th edition, 2008.

## Chapter 9 <br> Clustering


#### Abstract

Clustering is unsupervised learning that assigns labels to objects in unlabeled data. When clustering is performed on data that do have physical classes, the clusters may or may not correspond with the physical classes. Cluster partitions may be mathematically represented by sets, partition matrices, and/or cluster prototypes. Sequential clustering (single linkage, complete linkage, average linkage, Ward's method, etc.) is easily implemented but computationally expensive. Partitional clustering can be based on hard, fuzzy, possibilistic, or noise clustering models. Cluster prototypes can take many forms such as hyperspheric, ellipsoidal, linear, circles, or more complex shapes. Relational clustering models find clusters in relational data. Complex relational clusters can be found by kernelization. Cluster tendency assessment finds out if the data contain clusters at all, and cluster validity measures help to identify an appropriate number of clusters. Clustering can also be done by heuristic methods such as the self-organizing map.


### 9.1 Cluster Partitions

The previous chapter on classification considered data sets that contain feature vectors $X$ and class labels $Y$. In many applications class labels are not available or at least difficult to obtain, for example by manual labeling. Clustering $[18,19]$ identifies structures in unlabeled feature data $X$. When clustering is performed on data that do have physical classes (such as the Iris data), the clusters may or may not correspond with the physical classes, however, clusters are often used as class estimates. Fig. 9.1 illustrates the clustering methods presented in this book. We distinguish sequential and partitional clustering. Partitional clustering may use different clustering models (hard, fuzzy, possibilistic, noise), prototypes (hyperspheric, ellipsoidal, linear, complex shapes), and other characteristics (medoids, relational, kernelized, heuristic).

Fig. 9.2 (left) shows a scatter plot of the data set


Fig. 9.1 Some important clustering methods.



Fig. 9.2 A data set and its cluster structure.

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\{(2,2),(3,2),(4,3),(6,7),(7,8),(8,8),(5,5)\} \tag{9.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

that arguably contains two clusters, bottom left and top right, whose crisp boundaries are illustrated by the dashed circles in Fig. 9.2 (right). The cluster structure partitions this data set $X$ into the disjoint subsets $C_{1}=\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}\right\}$ and $C_{2}=\left\{x_{4}, x_{5}, x_{6}\right\}$. More generally, crisp clustering partitions a data set $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$ into $c \in\{2,3, \ldots, n-1\}$ disjoint subsets $C_{1}, \ldots, C_{c}$ so that

$$
\begin{align*}
X & =C_{1} \cup \ldots \cup C_{c}  \tag{9.2}\\
C_{i} & \neq\{ \} \quad \text { for all } i=1, \ldots, c  \tag{9.3}\\
C_{i} \cap C_{j} & =\{ \} \quad \text { for all } i, j=1, \ldots, c, \quad i \neq j \tag{9.4}
\end{align*}
$$

1. initialize $\Gamma_{n}=\left\{\left\{o_{1}\right\}, \ldots,\left\{o_{n}\right\}\right\}$
2. $\underline{\text { for }} c=n-1, n-2, \ldots, 1$

- $(i, j)=\underset{\operatorname{argmin}}{ } d\left(C_{r}, C_{s}\right)$
- $\Gamma_{c}=\left(\Gamma_{c+1}-C_{i}-C_{j}\right) \cup\left(C_{i} \cup C_{j}\right)$

3. output partitions $\Gamma_{1}, \ldots, \Gamma_{n}$

Fig. 9.3 Sequential agglomerative hierarchical nonoverlapping (SAHN) clustering.

### 9.2 Sequential Clustering

A popular family of sequential clustering methods is sequential agglomerative hierarchical nonoverlapping (SAHN) clustering [30] that is illustrated in Fig. 9.3. Initially, SAHN interprets each of the $n$ objects as an individual cluster, so the initial partition is $\Gamma_{n}=\left\{\left\{o_{1}\right\}, \ldots,\left\{o_{n}\right\}\right\}$. In each step, SAHN finds the pair of least dissimilar (or most similar) clusters and merges these two clusters to a new cluster, so the number of clusters is decreased by one. Notice that we restrict our attention to the dissimilarity version of SAHN here. SAHN terminates when the number of desired clusters is reached, or when all objects are merged to a single cluster which corresponds to the the partition $\Gamma_{1}=\left\{\left\{o_{1}, \ldots, o_{n}\right\}\right\}$. The dissimilarity between a pair of clusters can be computed from the dissimilarities between pairs of objects in various ways:

- minimum distance or single linkage

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(C_{r}, C_{s}\right)=\min _{x \in C_{r}, y \in C_{s}} d(x, y) \tag{9.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

- maximum distance or complete linkage

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(C_{r}, C_{s}\right)=\max _{x \in C_{r}, y \in C_{s}} d(x, y) \tag{9.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

- average distance or average linkage

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(C_{r}, C_{s}\right)=\frac{1}{\left|C_{r}\right| \cdot\left|C_{s}\right|} \sum_{x \in C_{r}, y \in C_{s}} d(x, y) \tag{9.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

These three options apply to relational or feature data. Two more options which are defined only for feature data are

- distance of the centers

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(C_{r}, C_{s}\right)=\left\|\frac{1}{\left|C_{r}\right|} \sum_{x \in C_{r}} x-\frac{1}{\left|C_{s}\right|} \sum_{x \in C_{s}} x\right\| \tag{9.8}
\end{equation*}
$$



Fig. 9.4 Distances between clusters (left: single and complete linkage, right: average linkage).


Fig. 9.5 Dendrogram.

- Ward's measure [31]

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(C_{r}, C_{s}\right)=\frac{\left|C_{r}\right| \cdot\left|C_{s}\right|}{\left|C_{r}\right|+\left|C_{s}\right|}\left\|\frac{1}{\left|C_{r}\right|} \sum_{x \in C_{r}} x-\frac{1}{\left|C_{s}\right|} \sum_{x \in C_{s}} x\right\| \tag{9.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fig. 9.4 visualizes the first three options (single, complete, and average linkage). The left diagram shows the minimum and maximum distances (single and complete linkage) between the clusters from Fig. 9.2. The right diagram shows all mutual distances that are used in average linkage. Eq. (9.5) is one of the most popular cluster distance measures. However, single linkage tends to form long stringy clusters. SAHN algorithms with specific cluster distance measures are often denoted by the measure only, for example SAHN with the (9.5) is simply called single linkage clustering.

The partitions produced by SAHN represent a hierarchical structure that can be visualized by a so-called dendrogram. Fig. 9.5 shows the single linkage dendrogram for our simple six point data set, that illustrates how the points $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{6}$ (indices on the horizontal axis) are successively merged. The vertical axis shows the single linkage distances. The single linkage partitions are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{0}=\left\{\left\{x_{1}\right\},\left\{x_{2}\right\},\left\{x_{3}\right\},\left\{x_{4}\right\},\left\{x_{5}\right\},\left\{x_{6}\right\}\right\} \tag{9.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
\Gamma_{1}=\Gamma_{2} & =\left\{\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}\right\},\left\{x_{3}\right\},\left\{x_{4}\right\},\left\{x_{5}, x_{6}\right\}\right\}  \tag{9.11}\\
\Gamma_{3}=\Gamma_{4} & =\left\{\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}\right\},\left\{x_{4}, x_{5}, x_{6}\right\}\right\}  \tag{9.12}\\
\Gamma_{5} & =\left\{\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}, x_{4}, x_{5}, x_{6}\right\}\right\}=\{X\} \tag{9.13}
\end{align*}
$$

A variant of SAHN uses density estimators instead of distance measures to merge clusters: density-based spatial clustering of applications with noise (DBSCAN) [28].

The reverse or bottom-up variant of SAHN is sequential divisive hierarchical nonoverlapping (SDHN) clustering which starts with all points in one cluster and successively separates clusters into sub-clusters, so $c_{0}=1$ and $\Gamma_{0}=\left\{\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}\right\}$. Separating clusters is not a trivial task, so SDHN is less popular than SAHN. An example of literature on SDHN is [11].

The main advantages of SAHN are that it is easily implemented and provides information about the hierarchical cluster structure. The main disadvantage is the high computational complexity $\left(o\left(n^{3}\right)\right.$ for the algorithm in Fig. 9.3). Notice that more efficient algorithms for SAHN $\left(o\left(n^{2} \log n\right)\right)$ and single linkage $\left(o\left(n^{2}\right)\right)$ have been presented in the literature [10].

### 9.3 Prototype-Based Clustering

In the previous section we represented a partition of $X$ by a partition set $\Gamma$ containing disjoint subsets of $X$. An equivalent representation is a partition matrix $U$ with the elements

$$
u_{i k}= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } x_{k} \in C_{i}  \tag{9.14}\\ 0 & \text { if } x_{k} \notin C_{i}\end{cases}
$$

$i=1, \ldots, c, k=1, \ldots, n$, so $u_{i k}$ is a membership value that indicates if $x_{k}$ belongs to $C_{i}$. For non-empty clusters we require

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}>0, \quad i=1, \ldots, c \tag{9.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and for pairwise disjoint clusters

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}=1, \quad k=1, \ldots, n \tag{9.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fig. 9.6 (left) shows our six point data set again with vertical bars representing the second row of the partition matix. The second row of the partition matrix is one for the elements of the second cluster and zero for all other points. Therefore, there are three bars with height one at the points $x_{4}, \ldots, x_{6}$, and there are no bars (zero height) at the other points.

Besides partition sets and partition matrices also cluster prototypes can be used to represent clusters when the data are feature vectors. For example, each cluster may be represented by a (single) center $v_{i}, i=1, \ldots, c$, so the cluster structure is defined by the set of cluster centers

$$
\begin{equation*}
V=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{c}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p} \tag{9.17}
\end{equation*}
$$




Fig. 9.6 Cluster memberships and cluster centers.

Given a data set $X$, the cluster centers $V$ and the assignment of data points $X$ to clusters can be found by optimizing the $c$-means ( $C M$ ) clustering model [1] defined as the sum of the square distances between the cluster centers and the data points belonging to the respective clusters.

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{C M}(U, V ; X)=\sum_{i=1}^{c} \sum_{x_{k} \in C_{i}}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{c} \sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2} \tag{9.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

To minimize $J_{C M}$, for each $k$ we pick the the minimum $\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|$ and set the corresponding membership $u_{i k}$ to one. This yields the partition matrix $U \in[0,1]^{c \times p}$ with

$$
u_{i k}= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if }\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|=\min _{j=1, \ldots, c}\left\|x_{k}-v_{j}\right\|  \tag{9.19}\\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

where ties have to be handled in an appropriate way, for example by random assignment. The necessary condition for extrema of (9.18)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial J_{C M}(U, V ; X)}{\partial v_{i}}=0, \quad i=1, \ldots, c \tag{9.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

yields the cluster centers

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{i}=\frac{1}{\left|C_{i}\right|} \sum_{x_{k} \in C_{i}} x_{k}=\frac{\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k} x_{k}}{\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}} \tag{9.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

So the cluster centers are the averages of the data points assigned to the corresponding cluster, and the data points are assigned to clusters using the nearest neighbor rule.

Notice that the optimal $V$ depends on $U$ (and $X$ ), and the optimal $U$ depends on $V$ (and $X$ ), so this requires an alternating optimization ( $A O$ ) of $U$ and $V$, as shown in Fig. 9.7. This AO variant initializes $V$, alternatingly computes $U$ and $V$,

```
1. input data \(X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}\),
    cluster number \(c \in\{2, \ldots, n-1\}\),
    maximum number of steps \(t_{\text {max }}\),
    distance measure \(\|\).\(\| ,\)
    distance measure for termination \(\|.\|_{\varepsilon}\),
    termination threshold \(\varepsilon\)
2. initialize prototypes \(V^{(0)} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}\)
3. for \(t=1, \ldots, t_{\text {max }}\)
    - compute \(U^{(t)}\left(V^{(t-1)}, X\right)\)
    - compute \(V^{(t)}\left(U^{(t)}, X\right)\)
    - \(\underline{\text { if }}\left\|V^{(t)}-V^{(t-1)}\right\|_{\varepsilon} \leq \varepsilon\), stop
```

4. output partition matrix $U \in[0,1]^{c \times n}$,
prototypes $V=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{c}\right\} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$

Fig. 9.7 Alternating optimization of clustering models.
and terminates on $V$. A dual AO variant initializes $U$, alternatingly computes $V$ and $U$, and terminates on $U$. The size of $V$ is $c \times p$, and the size of $U$ is $c \times n$, so for $p \ll n$, the AO variant shown in Fig. 9.7 is more efficient. However, for $p \gg n$ (for example in many bioinformatics applications) the dual variant is more efficient.

### 9.4 Fuzzy Clustering

CM clustering works well if the clusters are well separated and do not contain inliers or outliers. We add the point $x_{7}=(5,5)$ to the previously considered six point data set and obtain the new seven point data set

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=\{(2,2),(3,2),(4,3),(6,7),(7,8),(8,8),(5,5)\} \tag{9.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fig. 9.8 (left) shows this data set, with the new data point shown as a plus sign. Assigning the additional data point to either of the two clusters would contradict intuition. Because the data set is symmetric about the new point, it seems reasonable to assign it equal, partial membership in both clusters. A partial cluster assignment can be formally realized by allowing the elements of the partition matrix to be in the unit interval $u_{i k} \in[0,1], i=1, \ldots, c, k=1, \ldots, n$. In correspondence with (9.15) we require non-empty fuzzy clusters

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}>0, \quad i=1, \ldots, c \tag{9.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

and in correspondence with (9.16) we require that for each point the cluster memberships sum up to one


Fig. 9.8 Data set with a point that belongs to both clusters (left) and part of a fuzzy 2-partition (right).

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}=1, \quad k=1, \ldots, n \tag{9.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Condition (9.24) is similar to the normalization of probabilistic distributions, but these set memberships are not probabilistic. For a discussion on the difference between fuzziness and probability we refer to [3]. Fig. 9.8 (right) shows the memberships of (the second row of) a fuzzy partition. The memberships of the new point $x_{7}$ are $u_{17}=u_{27}=1 / 2$. The memberships $u_{21}, u_{22}, u_{23}$ are small but may be different from zero, and the memberships $u_{24}, u_{25}, u_{26}$ are large but may be less than one to satisfy constraint (9.24). Each point is assigned to all (both) clusters to a certain degree.

Given a data set $X$, a set of protoypes $V$ and a fuzzy partition matrix $U$ and be found by optimizing the fuzzy c-means (FCM) clustering model [2,7] defined by the objective function

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{\mathrm{FCM}}(U, V ; X)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}^{m}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2} \tag{9.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the constraints $0 \leq u_{i k} \leq 1$, (9.23) and (9.24). The parameter $m>1$ specifies the fuzziness of the clusters. As $m \rightarrow 1$ from above, FCM becomes CM. For $m \rightarrow \infty$ each point in $X-V$ will obtain the same membership $u_{i k}=1 / c, i=1, \ldots, c, k=1, \ldots, n$, in all clusters. A frequent choice is $m=2$. In FCM, constraint (9.23) can be formally ignored but constraint (9.24) has to be respected in order to avoid the trivial solution $u_{i k}=0, i=1, \ldots, c, k=1, \ldots, n$. Finding extrema of $J_{\mathrm{FCM}}$ begins with the Lagrange function (see appendix)

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{\mathrm{FCM}}(U, V, \lambda ; X)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}^{m}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}-\sum_{k=1}^{n} \lambda_{k} \cdot\left(\sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}-1\right) \tag{9.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

The necessary conditions for extrema yield

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial F_{\mathrm{FCM}}}{\partial \lambda_{k}}=0 \\
\frac{\partial F_{\mathrm{FCM}}}{\partial u_{i k}}=0 \tag{9.28}
\end{array}\right\} \Rightarrow u_{i k}=1 / \sum_{j=1}^{c}\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|}{\left\|x_{k}-v_{j}\right\|}\right)^{\frac{2}{m-1}}
$$

Comparing (9.25) with (9.18), (9.27) with (9.19), and (9.28) with (9.21) confirms that as $m \rightarrow 1$ from above, FCM becomes CM. In FCM, $U$ depends on $V$, and $V$ depends on $U$, so $U$ and $V$ are found by alternating optimization (AO) as shown in Fig. 9.7. Other methods have been proposed to optimize FCM, for example evolutionary algorithms [6] or swarm intelligence [27].

FCM often yields good results, even if the clusters are overlapping and data are noisy, but it is sensitive to outliers. Outliers that are almost equally distant to all cluster centers receive the FCM memberships $u_{i k} \approx 1 / c, i=1, \ldots, c$, in order to satisfy the normalization criterion (9.24). So for FCM , outliers are equivalent to other data points that are equidistant to all data points like the middle point in Fig. 9.8. But intuitively we expect outliers to have low membership in all clusters because they are not representative for any cluster. This may be realized by dropping the normalization criterion (9.24) and adding a penalty term to the FCM objective function, which yields the possibilistic c-means (PCM) clustering model [23] with the objective function

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{\mathrm{PCM}}(U, V ; X)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}^{m}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{c} \eta_{i} \sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(1-u_{i k}\right)^{m} \tag{9.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the constraint (9.23) and the cluster sizes $\eta_{1}, \ldots, \eta_{c}>0$. The necessary conditions for extrema yield (9.28) and

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{i k}=1 / \sum_{j=1}^{c}\left(1+\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}}{\eta_{i}}\right)^{\frac{1}{m-1}}\right) \tag{9.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is a so-called Cauchy function.
An alternative approach to handle outliers in fuzzy clustering defines an additional cluster specifically for outliers. The membership of each point in this outlier cluster is one minus the memberships in the regular clusters. The outlier cluster does not have a cluster center, but the distance between each data point and the outlier cluster is a constant $\delta>0$ that has to be chosen higher than the distances between non-outliers and regular cluster centers. This yields the noise clustering (NC) model [9] with the objective function

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{\mathrm{NC}}(U, V ; X)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}^{m}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}+\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(1-\sum_{j=1}^{c} u_{j k}\right)^{m} \delta^{2} \tag{9.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

The necessary conditions for extrema yield (9.28) and

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{i k}=1 /\left(\sum_{j=1}^{c}\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|}{\left\|x_{k}-v_{j}\right\|}\right)^{\frac{2}{m-1}}+\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|}{\delta}\right)^{\frac{2}{m-1}}\right) \tag{9.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

The distances in the objective functions of CM (9.18), FCM (9.25), PCM (9.29), NC (9.31) and in the corresponding equations for $u_{i k}$ (9.19),(9.27), (9.30), (9.32) can be defined by any of the measures from chapter 2, for example the Euclidean norm or the Mahalanobis norm. A variant of the Mahalanobis norm considers the covariance matrices of the individual clusters instead of the whole data set. The covariance within cluster $i=1, \ldots, c$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{i}=\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}^{m}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right)^{T}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) \tag{9.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

which corresponds to the within-class covariance (8.24) for linear discriminant analysis (chapter 8). The within-cluster covariance defines a norm inducing matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i}=\sqrt[p]{\rho_{i} \operatorname{det}\left(S_{i}\right)} S_{i}^{-1} \tag{9.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

which normalizes each cluster to the hypervolume $\operatorname{det}\left(A_{i}\right)=\rho_{i}$. A frequent choice is $\rho_{1}=\ldots=\rho_{c}=1$. FCM with the within-cluster Mahalanobis norm is also called the Gustafson-Kessel (GK) clustering model [13] with the objective function

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{\mathrm{GK}}(U, V ; X)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}^{m}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) A_{i}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right)^{T} \tag{9.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

The within-cluster Mahalanobis norm can also be used in CM, PCM, and NC.
The Euclidean norm yields hyperspherical clusters, and the within-cluster Mahalanobis norm yields hyperellipsoidal clusters. Expanding our notion of prototypes to include structures more complex than points in the feature space allows us to model more complicated geometric cluster structures. A line, plane, or hyperplane can be defined by a point $v_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$ and one or more directions $d_{i 1}, \ldots, d_{i q}, q \in\{1, \ldots, p-1\}$, where $q=1$ for lines and $q=2$ for planes. The distance of a point $x_{k}$ and such a line, plane, or hyperplane follows from the orthogonal projection.

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(x_{k}, v_{i}, d_{i 1}, \ldots, d_{i q}\right)=\sqrt{\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}-\sum_{l=1}^{q}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) d_{i l}^{T}} \tag{9.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

Formally, the distance $\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|$ in any clustering model (CM, FCM, PCM, or NC) and the corresponding equations to compute $U$ can be simply replaced by (9.36) to obtain a clustering model for lines, planes, or hyperplanes. For FCM, for example,


Fig. 9.9 Detection of lines and circles by clustering.
we obtain the fuzzy c-varieties (FCV) clustering model [4]

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{\mathrm{FCV}}(U, V, D ; X)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}^{m}\left(\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}-\sum_{l=1}^{q}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) d_{i l}^{T}\right) \tag{9.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $q=1$, this is also called the fuzzy c-lines (FCL) clustering model. For FCV/FCL, $U$ is then computed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{i k}=1 / \sum_{j=1}^{c}\left(\frac{\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}-\sum_{l=1}^{q}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) d_{i l}^{T}}{\left\|x_{k}-v_{j}\right\|^{2}-\sum_{l=1}^{q}\left(x_{k}-v_{j}\right) d_{j l}^{T}}\right)^{\frac{1}{m-1}} \tag{9.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

$V$ by (9.28), and $D$ are the eigenvalues of the within-cluster covariance matrices (9.33).

$$
\begin{equation*}
d_{i j}=\operatorname{eig}_{j} \sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}^{m}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right)^{T}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right), \quad j=1, \ldots, q \tag{9.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

A third example of non-spherical prototypes (besides GK and FCV/FCL) are elliptotypes [5] defined by the distance

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(x_{k}, v_{i}, d_{i 1}, \ldots, d_{i q}\right)=\sqrt{\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2}-\alpha \cdot \sum_{l=1}^{q}\left(x_{k}-v_{i}\right) d_{i l}^{T}} \tag{9.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the parameter $\alpha \in[0,1]$. For $\alpha=0$ elliptotypes are points, and for $\alpha=1$ elliptotypes are lines, planes, or hyperplanes. Elliptotypes are used, for example, to define the fuzzy c-elliptotypes (FCE) clustering model. Fig. 9.9 (left) shows the cluster prototypes found by AO of FCE with the parameters $c=2, m=2, q=1, \alpha=$ $0.5, t_{\max }=100$. The cluster centers $v_{1}, v_{2}$ are shown as circles, and the directions $d_{11}, d_{21}$ are shown as arrows. They match well the local linear structures.

An example of more complicated geometric prototypes are circles. Each circle can be represented by a center $v_{i}$ and a radius $r_{i}$. The distance between point $x_{k}$ and
such a circle is

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(x_{k}, v_{i}, r_{i}\right)=\left|\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|-r_{i}\right| . \tag{9.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

which defines, for example, the fuzzy c-shells (FCS) clustering model [8]. In FCS, the centers are computed by (9.28), and the radii by

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{i}=\frac{\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}^{m}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|}{\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}^{m}} \tag{9.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fig. 9.9 (right) shows the FCS results for a data set with two circles. A wide variety of clustering models for complex geometries can be obtained by combining basic clustering models (CM, FCM, PCM, NC) with appropriate distance measures.

### 9.5 Relational Clustering

The previously presented clustering methods find clusters in feature data sets $X \subset$ $\mathbb{R}^{p}$. This section presents clustering methods that find clusters in relational data specified by relation matrices $R \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ (compare chapter 2). More specifically, we consider symmetric distance matrices $D$, where $d_{i i}=0, d_{i j}=d_{j i}, i, j=1, \ldots, n$. Relational data may be approximately transformed to feature data using multidimensional scaling or Sammon mapping (chapter 4), and then conventional clustering methods may be used to find clusters in the resulting feature data. Here, we focus on relational clustering that finds clusters in relational data without explicitly producing feature data [26].

SAHN clustering with single, complete, or average linkage never uses the feature vectors but only the distances between pairs of feature vectors, so SAHN is relational clustering. The CM, FCM, PCM, and NC clustering models use distances between feature vectors and cluster centers. If we require the cluster centers to be chosen from the set of data vectors, $V \subseteq X$, the so-called medoids [22], then these clustering models can also be used for relational clustering, because all possible distances between feature vectors and medoids are available in $R$. The corresponding clustering models are called relational c-medoids ( $R C M d d$ ), relational fuzzy cmedoids (RFCMdd), relational possibilistic c-medoids (RPCMdd), relational noise clustering with medoids ( $R N C M d d$ ). The restriction to medoids leaves the clustering model unchanged but adds the constraint $V \subseteq X$ that makes sure that $U$ can be computed from $R$. The selection of the medoids $V$ is a discrete optimization problem that is usually solved by exhaustive search. We illustrate this for RFCMdd. The contribution of cluster $i$ to the objective function $J_{\mathrm{RFCMdd}}=J_{\mathrm{FCM}}$ is the additive term

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{i}^{*}=\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}^{m}\left\|x_{k}-v_{i}\right\|^{2} \tag{9.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

so we can write $J=\sum_{i=1}^{c} J_{i}^{*}$. Without loss of generality we assume that $v_{i}=x_{j}$, so we have $\left\|v_{i}-x_{k}\right\|=r_{j k}$ and further

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{i}^{*}=J_{i j}=\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i k}^{m} r_{j k}^{2} \tag{9.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

So the best choice of the medoids is $v_{i}=x_{w_{i}}, i=1, \ldots, n$, where

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{i}=\operatorname{argmin}\left\{J_{i 1}, \ldots, J_{i n}\right\} \tag{9.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

This exhaustive search usually leads to a large computational effort.
A different approach to transform feature based clustering models to relational clustering models is to only implicitly compute the cluster prototypes, for example by inserting the equation for optimal cluster centers into the objective function of the clustering model. This so-called reformulation [15] yields objective functions for relational clustering. Reformulation of CM, FCM, PCM, and NC yields relational c-means ( $R C M$ ), relational fuzzy c-means (RFCM), relational possibilistic c-means ( $R P C M$ ), and relational noise clustering $(R N C)$ [16]. We illustrate the reformulation for the example of RFCM. Inserting (9.28) into (9.25) yields the objective function

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{\mathrm{RFCM}}(U ; R)=\sum_{i=1}^{c} \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{i j}^{m} u_{i k}^{m} r_{j k}^{2}}{\sum_{j=1}^{n} u_{i j}^{m}} \tag{9.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

The necessary conditions for extrema of $J_{\text {RFCM }}$ yield
$i=1, \ldots, c, k=1, \ldots, n$.
Imagine that the relational data matrix $R$ may be computed from a feature data set $X$ using the norm $\|$.$\| , for example the Euclidean norm, then minimiz-$ ing $J_{\mathrm{FCM}}(U, V ; X)$ will yield the same partition $U$ (except for a reordering of the clusters) as minimizing $J_{\mathrm{RFCM}}(U ; R)$. The same holds for the pairs $\mathrm{CM} / \mathrm{RCM}$, PCM/RPCM, NC/RNC, CMdd/RCMdd, FCMdd/RFCMdd, PCMdd/RPCMdd, and NCMdd/RNCMdd. It does not hold, if $R$ is computed from $X$ using a different norm or without using feature data at all. In this case, the minimization of the relational objective function might yield memberships $u_{i k}<0$ or $u_{i k}>1$. This can be avoided by transforming the non-Euclidean matrix $D$ into a Euclidean matrix using the socalled beta transform [14]

$$
\begin{equation*}
D_{\beta}=D+\beta \cdot B \tag{9.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the parameter $\beta \geq 0$, where $B$ is the inverse diagonal matrix with $b_{i j}=1$ for all $i, j=1, \ldots, n, i \neq j$, and $b_{i i}=0$ for all $i=1, \ldots, n$. The parameter $\beta$ is initially set to zero and is successively increased until all memberships are in the unit interval. For the corresponding clustering models we use the prefix "NE" for "nonEuclidean", for example non-Euclidean relational fuzzy c-means (NERFCM) [14] or non-Euclidean relational possibilistic c-means (NERPCM) [25].

The previously presented relational clustering models are derived from feature data clustering models considering hyperspherical data. In the previous section we have presented feature data clustering models for more complicated cluster shapes like ellipsoidals, hyperplanes, or circles. It is difficult to extend these models to relational data. In chapter 8 we have used a different approach to extend algorithms from simple geometries to more complicated geometries: the kernel trick. For the support vector machine the kernel trick is used to transform low-dimensional nonlinear class borders to high-dimensional linear class borders. For clustering the kernel trick is used to transform low-dimensional clusters with complicated shapes to high-dimensional hyperspherical clusters. The kernel trick has been applied, for example, to CM [29, 38, 12], FCM [35, 36, 34], PCM [37], NERFCM [17], and NERPCM [25]. We denote the kernelized variants with the prefix " $k$ ", for example kCM , kFCM, kPCM, kNERFCM, kNERPCM. In relational clustering with Euclidean distances the kernel trick yields

$$
\begin{align*}
r_{j k}^{2} & =\left\|\varphi\left(x_{j}\right)-\varphi\left(x_{k}\right)\right\|^{2}  \tag{9.49}\\
& =\left(\varphi\left(x_{j}\right)-\varphi\left(x_{k}\right)\right)\left(\varphi\left(x_{j}\right)-\varphi\left(x_{k}\right)\right)^{T}  \tag{9.50}\\
& =\varphi\left(x_{j}\right) \varphi\left(x_{j}\right)^{T}-2 \varphi\left(x_{j}\right) \varphi\left(x_{k}\right)^{T}+\varphi\left(x_{k}\right) \varphi\left(x_{k}\right)^{T}  \tag{9.51}\\
& =k\left(x_{j}, x_{j}\right)-2 \cdot k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right)+k\left(x_{k}, x_{k}\right)  \tag{9.52}\\
& =2-2 \cdot k\left(x_{j}, x_{k}\right) \tag{9.53}
\end{align*}
$$

where we assume that $k(x, x)=0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$. So a kernel variant of a Euclidean relational clustering model can be realized by a simple preprocessing step where the relational data matrix $R$ is transformed to a kernelized matrix $R^{\prime}$ using (9.53), and the unchanged clustering algorithm is then applied to $R^{\prime}$ instead of $R$. For the Gaussian kernel (8.42) and the hyperbolic tangent kernel (8.43), for example, we obtain the kernel transformations

$$
\begin{align*}
& r_{j k}^{\prime}=\sqrt{2-2 \cdot e^{-\frac{r_{j k}^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}}}  \tag{9.54}\\
& r_{j k}^{\prime}=\sqrt{2 \cdot \tanh \left(\frac{r_{j k}^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}\right)} \tag{9.55}
\end{align*}
$$

Fig. 9.10 shows these functions for $\sigma \in\{1,2,3,4\}$. Notice the similarity between these two kernel transformations. The distances are softly clipped at the threshold $r^{\prime}=\sqrt{2}$, and small distances are approximately linearly scaled. We assume that the clustering algorithm is invariant to an arbitrary scaling of the distances by a constant


Fig. 9.10 Kernel transformation by Gaussian kernel (left) and hyperbolic tangent kernel (right).


Fig. 9.11 Scaled kernel transformation by Gaussian kernel (left) and hyperbolic tangent kernel (right).
factor $\alpha>0$, so $R$ and $R^{*}, r_{j k}^{*}=\alpha \cdot r_{j k}, j, k=1, \ldots, n$, will yield the same results. We can therefore multiply each function in Fig. 9.10 with an arbitrary constant factor, more specifically with a factor that yields a slope of one at the origin (Fig. 9.11). This view illustrates that the kernel transforms yield a soft clipping of the distance at the threshold $\sigma$, so the effect of large distances in $R$, for example caused by outliers, is reduced [24].

### 9.6 Cluster Tendency Assessment

Clustering algorithms will find clusters in data, even if the data do not contain any clusters. Cluster tendency assessment attempts to find out if there are clusters contained in the data at all. A popular cluster tendency assessment method uses the Hopkins index [18, 19]. To compute the Hopkins index of a data set $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$ we first randomly pick $m$ points $R=\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}\right\}$ in the convex hull of $X$, where $m \ll n$. Notice that this is a non-trivial computing problem; to


Fig. 9.12 Three data sets and their Hopkins indices.
avoid this, some authors suggest to use the minimal hypercube instead of the convex hull. Then we randomly pick $m$ data points $S=\left\{s_{1}, \ldots, s_{m}\right\}$ from $X$, so $S \subset X$. For both sets $R$ and $S$ we compute the distances to the nearest neighbor in $X$, which yields $d_{r_{1}}, \ldots, d_{r_{m}}$ and $d_{s_{1}}, \ldots, d_{s_{m}}$. Based on these distances the Hopkins index is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
h=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{m} d_{r_{i}}^{p}}{\sum_{i=1}^{m} d_{r_{i}}^{p}+\sum_{i=1}^{m} d_{s_{i}}^{p}} \tag{9.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

which yields $h \in[0,1]$. We distinguish three cases

1. For $h \approx 0.5$ the nearest neighbor distances in $X$ are almost the same as between $R$ and $X$, so $R$ and $X$ have similar distributions. Since $R$ was purely randomly chosen, we can conclude that $X$ is also randomly distributed and does not contain clusters.
2. For $h \approx 1$ the nearest neighbor distances in $X$ are relatively small, which indicates that $X$ contains a cluster structure.
3. For $h \approx 0$ the nearest neighbor distances in $X$ are relatively large, which indicates that $X$ is on a regular grid.

To illustrate these three cases, Fig. 9.12 shows three different data sets and their Hopkins indices ( $m=10, n=1000$ ). The left data set is randomly distributed, so $h \approx 0.5$. The middle data set contains two well-separated clusters, so $h \approx 1$. The right data set is on a regular rectangular grid, so $h$ is very small. A Hopkins index $h>0.5$ indicates that the data possess a cluster structure.

### 9.7 Cluster Validity

The Hopkins index may indicate whether or not a data set contains clusters. All clustering methods presented here require specification of the number $c \in\{2, \ldots, n-1\}$

Table 9.1 Validity indices for crisp and indifferent partitions.

| \| $U$ | $P C(U)$ | $C E(U)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left(\begin{array}{cccc}1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & & 0 \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & 1\end{array}\right)$ |  |  |
| $\left(\begin{array}{ccc}\frac{1}{c} & \ldots & \frac{1}{c} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{1}{c} & \ldots & \frac{1}{c}\end{array}\right)$ | $\frac{1}{c}$ | $\log c$ |

of clusters to seek. In many applications the number of clusters is not known in advance. To estimate the number of clusters contained in the data, cluster validity measures are used. Clustering is performed for different numbers of clusters, and the resulting partition with the best validity indicates the appropriate number of clusters. Frequently used cluster validity measures are the average square membership or partition coefficient (PC) [2]

$$
\begin{equation*}
P C(U)=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c} u_{i k}^{2} \tag{9.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the average entropy or classification entropy (CE) [33]

$$
\begin{equation*}
C E(U)=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{c}-u_{i k} \cdot \log u_{i k} \tag{9.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
-0 \cdot \log 0=\lim _{u \rightarrow 0}-u \log u=0 \tag{9.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

Table 9.1 shows the validity indices PC and CE for a crisp and for an indifferent partition, where the crisp partition is more valid than the indifferent partition. So, a good choice of the cluster number will yield a high value of PC (close to one), or a low value of CE (close to zero).

### 9.8 Self-Organizing Map

A self-organizing map $[20,21,32]$ is a regular $q$-dimensional array of a total of $l$ reference nodes used for clustering and projection. Unlike most other clustering and projection methods presented here, the self-organizing map does not optimize an objective function but is a pure heuristic algorithm. Two-dimensional self-organizing maps may have a rectangular or hexagonal structure (Fig. 9.13) Each node has a location vector $r_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{q}$ that defines its position on the map, and a reference vector


Fig. 9.13 Rectangular and hexagonal self-organizing map.
$m_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$ that relates to the data $X, i=1, \ldots, l$. For training the reference vectors $m_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}$ are first randomly initialized. Then for each data point $x_{k} \in X$ we find the closest reference vector, say $m_{c}$, and update the reference vectors that are located on the map in the neighborhood of $r_{c}$. The neighborhood may be defined by the bubble function

$$
h_{c i}= \begin{cases}\alpha(t) & \text { if }\left\|r_{c}-r_{i}\right\|<\rho(t)  \tag{9.60}\\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

or the Gaussian function

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{c i}=\alpha(t) \cdot e^{-\frac{\left\|r_{c}-r_{i}\right\|^{2}}{2 \cdot \rho^{2}(t)}} \tag{9.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

The neighborhood radius $\rho(t)$ and the learning rate $\alpha(t)$ may be monotonically decreased, for example by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha(t)=\frac{A}{B+t}, \quad A, B>0 \tag{9.62}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fig. 9.14 shows the training algorithm of a self-organizing map. Notice the similarity of the update of the reference vectors with learning vector quantization (chapter 8). After training, regions of close (or even equal) reference vectors on the map indicate clusters in the data. Moreover, each data point can be mapped to the closest reference vector.

## Problems

9.1. Draw the single linkage dendrogram for $X=\{-6,-5,0,4,7\}$.
9.2. Draw the complete linkage dendrogram for the same data set $X$.
9.3. Compute the sequence of cluster centers that c-means produces for $X$ with initialization $V=\{5,6\}$.
9.4. Find an initialization for which c-means yields a different result for $X$.
9.5. What is the difference between classification and clustering?

1. input data $X=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$,
map dimension $q \in\{1, \ldots, p-1\}$,
node positions $R=\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{l}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{q}$
2. initialize $M=\left\{m_{1}, \ldots, m_{l}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}, t=1$
3. for each $x_{k}, k=1, \ldots, n$,
a. find winner node $m_{c}$ with

$$
\left\|x_{k}-m_{c}\right\| \leq\left\|x_{k}-m_{i}\right\| \quad \forall i=1, \ldots, l
$$

b. update winner and neighbors

$$
m_{i}=m_{i}+h_{c i} \cdot\left(x_{k}-m_{c}\right) \quad \forall i=1, \ldots, l
$$

4. $t=t+1$
5. repeat from (3.) until termination criterion holds
6. output reference vectors $M=\left\{m_{1}, \ldots, m_{l}\right\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{p}$

Fig. 9.14 Training algorithm for a self-organizing map.

## References

1. G. B. Ball and D. J. Hall. Isodata, an iterative method of multivariate analysis and pattern classification. In IFIPS Congress, 1965.
2. J. C. Bezdek. Pattern Recognition with Fuzzy Objective Function Algorithms. Plenum Press, New York, 1981.
3. J. C. Bezdek. Fuzzy models what are they, and why? IEEE Transactions on Fuzzy Systems, 1(1):1-6, 1993.
4. J. C. Bezdek, C. Coray, R. Gunderson, and J. Watson. Detection and characterization of cluster substructure, I. Linear structure: Fuzzy c-lines. SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics, 40(2):339-357, April 1981.
5. J. C. Bezdek, C. Coray, R. Gunderson, and J. Watson. Detection and characterization of cluster substructure, II. Fuzzy c-varieties and convex combinations thereof. SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics, 40(2):358-372, April 1981.
6. J. C. Bezdek and R. J. Hathaway. Optimization of fuzzy clustering criteria using genetic algorithms. In IEEE Conference on Evolutionary Computation, Orlando, volume 2, pages 589-594, June 1994.
7. J. C. Bezdek, J. M. Keller, R. Krishnapuram, and N. R. Pal. Fuzzy Models and Algorithms for Pattern Recognition and Image Processing. Kluwer, Norwell, 1999.
8. R. N. Davé. Fuzzy shell clustering and application to circle detection in digital images. International Journal on General Systems, 16:343-355, 1990.
9. R. N. Davé. Characterization and detection of noise in clustering. Pattern Recognition Letters, 12:657-664, 1991.
10. W. H. E. Day and H. Edelsbrunner. Efficient algorithms for agglomerative hierarchical clustering methods. Journal of Classification, 1(1):7-24, 1984.
11. H. Fang and Y. Saad. Farthest centroids divisive clustering. In International Conference on Machine Learning and Applications, pages 232-238, 2008.
12. M. Girolami. Mercer kernel-based clustering in feature space. IEEE Transactions on Neural Networks, 13:780-784, 2002.
13. E. E. Gustafson and W. C. Kessel. Fuzzy clustering with a covariance matrix. In IEEE International Conference on Decision and Control, San Diego, pages 761-766, 1979.
14. R. J. Hathaway and J. C. Bezdek. NERF c-means: Non-Euclidean relational fuzzy clustering. Pattern Recognition, 27:429-437, 1994.
15. R. J. Hathaway and J. C. Bezdek. Optimization of clustering criteria by reformulation. IEEE Transactions on Fuzzy Systems, 3(2):241-245, May 1995.
16. R. J. Hathaway, J. W. Davenport, and J. C. Bezdek. Relational duals of the c-means algorithms. Pattern Recognition, 22:205-212, 1989.
17. R. J. Hathaway, J. M. Huband, and J. C. Bezdek. Kernelized non-Euclidean relational fuzzy c-means algorithm. In IEEE International Conference on Fuzzy Systems, pages 414-419, Reno, May 2005.
18. A. K. Jain and R. C. Dubes. Algorithms for Clustering Data. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1988.
19. A. K. Jain, M. N. Murty, and P. J. Flynn. Data clustering: A review. ACM Computing Surveys, 31(3):264-323, 1999.
20. T. Kohonen. Automatic formation of topological maps of patterns in a self-organizing system. In E. Oja and O. Simula, editors, Scandinavian Conference on Image Analysis, pages 214-220, Helsinki, 1981.
21. T. Kohonen. Self-Organizing Maps. Springer, Berlin, 2001.
22. R. Krishnapuram, A. Joshi, O. Nasraoui, and L. Yi. Low-complexity fuzzy relational clustering algorithms for web mining. IEEE Transactions on Fuzzy Systems, 9(4):595-607, August 2001.
23. R. Krishnapuram and J. M. Keller. A possibilistic approach to clustering. IEEE Transactions on Fuzzy Systems, 1(2):98-110, May 1993.
24. T. A. Runkler. The effect of kernelization in relational fuzzy clustering. In GMA/GI Workshop Fuzzy Systems and Computational Intelligence, Dortmund, pages 48-61, November 2006.
25. T. A. Runkler. Kernelized non-euclidean relational possibilistic c-means clustering. In IEEE Three Rivers Workshop on Soft Computing in Industrial Applications, Passau, August 2007.
26. T. A. Runkler. Relational fuzzy clustering. In J. Valente de Oliveira and W. Pedrycz, editors, Advances in Fuzzy Clustering and its Applications, chapter 2, pages 31-52. Wiley, 2007.
27. T. A. Runkler. Wasp swarm optimization of the c-means clustering model. International Journal of Intelligent Systems, 23(3):269-285, February 2008.
28. J. Sander, M. Ester, H.-P. Kriegel, and X. Xu. Density-based clustering in spatial databases: The algorithm GDBSCAN and its applications. Data Mining and Knowledge Discovery, 2(2):169-194, 1998.
29. B. Schölkopf, A.J. Smola, and K. R. Müller. Nonlinear component analysis as a kernel eigenvalue problem. Neural Computation, 10:1299-1319, 1998.
30. P. Sneath and R. Sokal. Numerical Taxonomy. Freeman, San Francisco, 1973.
31. J. H. Ward. Hierarchical grouping to optimize an objective function. Journal of American Statistical Association, 58(301):236-244, 1963.
32. D. J. Willshaw and C. von der Malsburg. How patterned neural connections can be set up by self-organization. Proceedings of the Royal Society London, B194:431-445, 1976.
33. M. P. Windham. Cluster validity for the fuzzy c-means clustering algorithm. IEEE Transactions on Pattern Analysis and Machine Intelligence, PAMI-4(4):357-363, July 1982.
34. Z.-D. Wu, W.-X. Xie, and J.-P. Yu. Fuzzy c-means clustering algorithm based on kernel method. In International Conference on Computational Intelligence and Multimedia Applications, pages 49-54, Xi'an, 2003.
35. D.-Q. Zhang and S.-C. Chen. Fuzzy clustering using kernel method. In International Conference on Control and Automation, pages 123-127, 2002.
36. D.-Q. Zhang and S.-C. Chen. Clustering incomplete data using kernel-based fuzzy c-means algorithm. Neural Processing Letters, 18:155-162, 2003.
37. D.-Q. Zhang and S.-C. Chen. Kernel-based fuzzy and possibilistic c-means clustering. In International Conference on Artificial Neural Networks, pages 122-125, Istanbul, 2003.
38. R. Zhang and A.I. Rudnicky. A large scale clustering scheme for kernel k-means. In International Conference on Pattern Recognition, pages 289-292, Quebec, 2002.

## Appendix A

## Brief Review of Some Optimization Methods

In this book we have discussed many data analysis methods that use some form of optimization. Many data analysis algorithms are essentially optimization algorithms. In this appendix we briefly review the basics of the optimization methods used in this book: optimization with derivatives, gradient descent, and Lagrange optimization. For a more comprehensive overview of optimization methods the reader is referred to the literature, for example [1, 2, 3].

## A. 1 Optimization with Derivatives

A popular approach to find extrema of a differentiable function $y=f(x)$ is to set the necessary conditions for extrema of $f$ to zero

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{(i)}}=0 \tag{A.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the second derivative $\frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial\left(x^{i}\right)^{2}}$ is negative for maxima, positive for minima, and zero for saddle points. Suppose for example that we want to find the extrema of the function

$$
\begin{equation*}
y=f\left(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}\right)=\left(x^{(1)}-1\right)^{2}+\left(x^{(2)}-2\right)^{2} \tag{A.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The derivatives of $f$ are

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{(1)}}=2\left(x^{(1)}-1\right), \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{(2)}}=2\left(x^{(2)}-2\right)  \tag{A.3}\\
\frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial\left(x^{(1)}\right)^{2}}=2, \quad \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial\left(x^{(2)}\right)^{2}}=2 \tag{A.4}
\end{gather*}
$$

Setting the derivatives of $f$ to zero yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
2\left(x^{(1)}-1\right)=0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad x^{(1)}=1, \quad 2\left(x^{(2)}-2\right)=0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad x^{(2)}=2 \tag{A.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and since the second order derivatives are positive, $f$ has a minimum at $x=(1,2)$.

## A. 2 Gradient Descent

Gradient descent is an iterative approximative optimization method for differentiable functions. It is often suitable if setting the derivatives of $f$ to zero can not be explicitly solved. Gradient descent minimizes a function $y=f(x)$ by randomly initializing the parameter vector $x=x_{0}$ and then iteratively updating

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(i)}=x_{k-1}^{(i)}-\left.\alpha \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{(i)}}\right|_{x=x_{k-1}} \tag{A.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a suitable step length $\alpha>0$ and $k=1,2, \ldots$. For our example (A.2) we initialize $x=(0,0)$, use the gradients (A.3), and obtain with $\alpha=1 / 2$

$$
\begin{align*}
& x_{1}^{(1)}=0-\frac{1}{2} \cdot 2 \cdot(0-1)=1, \quad x_{1}^{(2)}=0-\frac{1}{2} \cdot 2 \cdot(0-2)=2  \tag{A.7}\\
& x_{2}^{(1)}=1-\frac{1}{2} \cdot 2 \cdot(1-1)=1, \quad x_{2}^{(2)}=2-\frac{1}{2} \cdot 2 \cdot(2-2)=2 \tag{A.8}
\end{align*}
$$

So in this case the gradient descent finds the correct minimum $x=(1,2)$ in one step. For the same example $\alpha=1 / 4$ yields

$$
\begin{gather*}
x_{1}^{(1)}=0-\frac{1}{4} \cdot 2 \cdot(0-1)=\frac{1}{2}, \quad x_{1}^{(2)}=0-\frac{1}{4} \cdot 2 \cdot(0-2)=1  \tag{A.9}\\
x_{2}^{(1)}=\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{4} \cdot 2 \cdot\left(\frac{1}{2}-1\right)=\frac{3}{4}, \quad x_{2}^{(2)}=1-\frac{1}{4} \cdot 2 \cdot(1-2)=\frac{3}{2}  \tag{A.10}\\
x_{3}^{(1)}=\frac{3}{4}-\frac{1}{4} \cdot 2 \cdot\left(\frac{3}{4}-1\right)=\frac{7}{8}, \quad x_{3}^{(2)}=\frac{3}{2}-\frac{1}{4} \cdot 2 \cdot\left(\frac{3}{2}-2\right)=\frac{7}{4} \tag{A.11}
\end{gather*}
$$

So the algorithm approximates of the correct minimum with a decreasing error that approaches zero as the number of steps approaches infinity. As a third example we choose $\alpha=1$, which yields

$$
\begin{align*}
& x_{1}^{(1)}=0-2 \cdot(0-1)=2, \quad x_{1}^{(2)}=0-2 \cdot(0-2)=4  \tag{A.12}\\
& x_{2}^{(1)}=2-2 \cdot(2-1)=0, \quad x_{2}^{(2)}=4-2 \cdot(4-2)=0 \tag{A.13}
\end{align*}
$$

So the algorithm infinitely alternates between $(2,4)$ and $(0,0)$. Finally, we choose $\alpha=2$, which yields

$$
\begin{gather*}
x_{1}^{(1)}=0-2 \cdot 2 \cdot(0-1)=4, \quad x_{1}^{(2)}=0-2 \cdot 2 \cdot(0-2)=8  \tag{A.14}\\
x_{2}^{(1)}=4-2 \cdot 2 \cdot(4-1)=-8, \quad x_{2}^{(2)}=8-2 \cdot 2 \cdot(8-2)=-16 \tag{A.15}
\end{gather*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{3}^{(1)}=-8-2 \cdot 2 \cdot(-8-1)=28, \quad x_{3}^{(2)}=-16-2 \cdot 2 \cdot(-16-2)=56 \tag{A.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

So the algorithm diverges to $( \pm \infty, \pm \infty)$. Thus, gradient descent is a simple optimization method that works well for many functions (like the chosen quadratic function) and which requires the step length $\alpha$ to be chosen appropriately. More advanced methods consider first and higher order derivatives to estimate suitable step lengths, for example Newton's method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}^{(i)}=x_{k-1}^{(i)}-\frac{\left.\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{(i)}}\right|_{x=x_{k-1}}}{\left.\frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial\left(x^{(i)}\right)^{2}}\right|_{x=x_{k-1}}} \tag{A.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

The simplex algorithm (also called Nelder-Mead method) is a better choice for minimizing constrained linear functions. Sequential programming is a family of optimization methods that successively minimizes approximations of the function to be minimized, for example sequential linear programming or sequential quadratic programming.

## A. 3 Lagrange Optimization

Consider the problem of optimizing a function $y=f(x)$ under the constraint $g(x)=0$. For example, we may require that $x^{(1)}=x^{(2)}$ by defining the constraint function $g\left(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}\right)=x^{(1)}-x^{(2)}$. In some cases constrained optimization can be done by inserting the constraint into the function to be optimized and then performing (unconstrained) optimization. For example, if we consider again our example (A.2) with the constraint $x^{(1)}=x^{(2)}$, then we can replace $x^{(2)}$ by $x^{(1)}$ and obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
y=f\left(x^{(1)}\right)=\left(x^{(1)}-1\right)^{2}+\left(x^{(1)}-2\right)^{2}=2\left(x^{(1)}\right)^{2}-6 x^{(1)}+5 \tag{A.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the first and second order derivatives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{(1)}}=4 x^{(1)}-6, \quad \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial\left(x^{(1)}\right)^{2}}=4 \tag{A.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Setting the (first order) derivative of $f$ to zero yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
4 x^{(1)}-6=0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad x^{(1)}=\frac{3}{2} \tag{A.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

so under the constraint $x^{(1)}=x^{(2)}, f$ has a minimum at $x=\left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\right)$. In many cases inserting the constraint does not lead to an explicitly solvable function. In such cases optimization under equality constraints can be done using Lagrange optimization. Lagrange optimization transforms the problem of optimizing a function $y=f(x)$ under the constraint $g(x)=0$ into the unconstrained problem of optimizing a func-
tion

$$
\begin{equation*}
L(x, \lambda)=f(x)-\lambda g(x) \tag{A.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

with an additional parameter $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. For our example (A.2) with $g\left(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}\right)=x^{(1)}-$ $x^{(2)}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \lambda\right)=\left(x^{(1)}-1\right)^{2}+\left(x^{(2)}-2\right)^{2}-\lambda\left(x^{(1)}-x^{(2)}\right) \tag{A.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the derivatives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial L}{\partial x^{(1)}}=2\left(x^{(1)}-1\right)-\lambda, \quad \frac{\partial L}{\partial x^{(2)}}=2\left(x^{(2)}-2\right)+\lambda, \quad \frac{\partial L}{\partial \lambda}=-\left(x^{(1)}-x^{(2)}\right) \tag{A.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Setting the derivatives to zero yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{(1)}=1+\frac{\lambda}{2}, \quad x^{(2)}=2-\frac{\lambda}{2}, \quad x^{(1)}=x^{(2)} \tag{A.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

and further $x=\left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\right)$. For multiple constraints $g_{1}(x), \ldots, g_{r}(x)$, Lagrange optimization is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
L(x, \lambda)=f(x)-\sum_{i=1}^{r} \lambda_{i} g_{i}(x) \tag{A.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the parameters $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r} \in \mathbb{R}$. Optimization becomes considerably more difficult when inequality constraints are part of the problem, for example, $g(x) \geq 0$. In this third case we use the Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) theory. See [2] for this method.

## References

1. R. Fletcher. Practical Methods of Optimization. Wiley, Chichester, 2000.
2. J. Nocedal and S. J. Wright. Numerical Optimization. Springer, New York, 2006.
3. R. K. Sundaram. A First Course in Optimization Theory. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1996.

## Solutions

## Problems of Chapter 2

2.1 cake: nominal, 350: interval, 45: ratio
2.2 (a) 4, (b) 3, (c) 2.8
2.3 (a) 4, (b) 16, (c) 16, (d) 2
2.4 (2.43): similarity, (2.44): similarity, (2.45): dissimilarity, (2.46): none

## Problems of Chapter 3

3.1 no noise, one outlier, no inlier
3.2 (a) outlier 4, (b) inlier middle 1 , (c) outlier $(2,1)$
3.3 (a) $\left(0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3}, 0\right)$, (b) $(0,0,0,0,0)$, (c) $\left(0,0,0, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{16}\right)$
3.4 hypercube: $\{(0,0),(1,1)\}, \mu-\sigma:\left\{\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2},-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right),\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)\right\}$

## Problems of Chapter 4

$4.1\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, 0, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right),\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, 0, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$
$4.2 X^{\prime}=\{(-3,-1),(0,0),(-2,2),(1,3)\}, X, 0$
4.3 $X^{\prime}=\{0,2 \sqrt{2}, 2 \sqrt{2}, 4 \sqrt{2}\}, X=\{(-3,-1,-1),(-1,-1,1),(-1,-1,1),(1,-1,3)\}$, $\sqrt{2} / 2$

## Problems of Chapter 5

$5.1 C=\left(\begin{array}{cc}\frac{2}{7} & 0 \\ 0 & 6\end{array}\right), S=\left(\begin{array}{ll}1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1\end{array}\right)$
5.20
5.31

## Problems of Chapter 6

6.1 $C=\left(\begin{array}{ll}2.5 & 2.5 \\ 2.5 & 2.5\end{array}\right), x^{(1)}=x^{(2)}$
6.2 $C=\left(\begin{array}{cc}2.5 & 0 \\ 0 & 2.5\end{array}\right), x^{(1)}=3, x^{(2)}=2$

## Problems of Chapter 7

$7.1(1,2 ; 3),(2,3 ; 5),(3,5 ; 8)$
$7.2 y_{k}=y_{k-1}+y_{k-2}$
$7.313,21,34, \ldots$

## Problems of Chapter 8

$8.1 p(1 \mid(0,0))=\frac{2}{3}, p(2 \mid(0,0))=\frac{1}{3}$
$8.2 x \cdot\binom{1}{1}-\frac{1}{2}=0$
8.3 $f(x)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } x^{(1)}<0.5 \text { and } x^{(2)}<0.5 \\ 2 & \text { if } x^{(1)}>0.5 \text { or } x^{(2)}>0.5 \\ \text { undefined } & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}$
$8.4 f(x)=2$
8.5 naive Bayes, $\mathrm{SVM}, \mathrm{NN}: \mathrm{TPR}=1, \mathrm{FPR}=0 ; 3-\mathrm{NN}: \mathrm{TPR}=1, \mathrm{FPR}=1$

## Problems of Chapter 9

$9.1\{\{-6,5\},\{0,\{4,7\}\}\}$
$9.2\{\{-6,5\}, 0\},\{4,7\}\}\}$
9.3 $V=\left\{-\frac{7}{4}, 7\right\}, V=\left\{-\frac{11}{3}, \frac{11}{2}\right\}$
9.4 for example $V=\left\{-\frac{11}{2}, \frac{11}{3}\right\}$

## List of Symbols

| $\forall x \in X$ | for each $x$ in $X$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\exists x \in X$ | there exists an $x$ in $X$ |
| $\Rightarrow$ | if ... then ... |
| $\Leftrightarrow$ | if and only if |
| $\int^{b} f d x$ | int |
| ${ }_{a}$ |  |
| $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}$ | partial derivative of $f$ with respect to $x$ |
| $\wedge$ | conjunction |
| $\checkmark$ | disjunction |
| $\cap$ | intersection |
| $\cup$ | union |
| $\neg$ | complement |
| $\backslash$ | set difference |
| $\subset, \subseteq$ | inclusion |
| . | product, inner product |
| $\times$ | cartesian product, vector product |
| \{\} | empty set |
| [ $x, y$ ] | closed interval from $x$ to $y$ |
| $(x, y],[x, y)$ | half-bounded intervals from $x$ to $y$ |
| $(x, y)$ | open interval from $x$ to $y$ |
| \|x| | absolute value of $x$ |
| $\|X\|$ | cardinality of the set $X$ |
| $\\|x\\|$ | norm of vector $x$ |
| $\lfloor x\rfloor$ | smallest integer $a \geq x$ |
| $\lceil x\rceil$ | largest integer $a \leq x$ |
| $\binom{n}{m}$ | vector with the components $n$ and $m$, binomial coefficient |
| $\infty$ | infinity |
| $a \ll b$ | $a$ is much less than $b$ |
| $a \gg b$ | $a$ is much greater than $b$ |


| $\alpha(t)$ | time variant learning rate |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\operatorname{argmin} X$ | index of the minimum of $X$ |
| $\operatorname{argmax} X$ | index of the maximum of $X$ |
| $\arctan x$ | arctangent of $x$ |
| $\operatorname{artanh} x$ | inverse hyperbolic tangent of $x$ |
| $c_{i j}$ | covariance between features $i$ and $j$ |
| $C E(U)$ | classification entropy of $U$ |
| $\operatorname{cov} X$ | covariance matrix of $X$ |
| $d(a, b)$ | distance between $a$ and $b$ |
| eig $X$ | eigenvectors and eigenvalues of $X$ |
| $F_{c}$ | Fourier cosine transform |
| $F_{s}$ | Fourier sine transform |
| $h(X)$ | Hopkins index of $X$ |
| $H(a, b)$ | Hamming distance between $a$ and $b$ |
| $H(Z)$ | minimal hypercube or entropy of $Z$ |
| $H(Z \mid a)$ | entropy of $Z$ given $a$ |
| $\inf X$ | infimum of $X$ |
| $\lambda$ | eigenvalue, Lagrange variable |
| $L(a, b)$ | edit distance between $a$ and $b$ |
| $\lim _{x \rightarrow y}$ | limit as $x$ approaches $y$ |
| $\log _{b} x$ | logarithm of $x$ to base $b$ |
| $\max X$ | maximum of $X$ |
| $\min X$ | minimum of $X$ |
| $a \bmod b$ | $a$ modulo $b$ |
| $N(\mu, \sigma)$ | Gaussian distribution with mean $\mu$ and standard deviation $\sigma$ |
| NaN | undefined (not a number) |
| $P C(U)$ | partition coefficient of $U$ |
| R | set of real numbers |
| $\mathbb{R}^{+}$ | set of positive real numbers |
| $r$ | radius |
| $s$ | standard deviation |
| $s_{i j}$ | correlation between features $i$ and $j$ |
| sup $X$ | supremum of $X$ |
| $\tanh x$ | hyperbolic tangent of $x$ |
| $u_{i k}$ | membership of the $k^{\text {th }}$ vector in the $i^{\text {th }}$ cluster |
| X | set or matrix $X$ |
| $\bar{x}$ | average of $X$ |
| $X^{T}, x^{T}$ | transpose of the matrix $X$, or the vector $x$ |
| $x_{k}$ | $k^{\text {th }}$ vector of $X$ |
| $x^{(i)}$ | $i^{\text {th }}$ component of $X$ |
| $x_{k}^{(i)}$ | $i^{\text {th }}$ componente of the $k^{\text {th }}$ vector of $X$ |
| $x$ | scalar or vector $x$ |
| $x(t)$ | time signal |
| $x(j 2 \pi f)$ | spectrum |

## Index

2-sigma rule, 22
activation function, 69
actuator, 1
additive noise, 21
alternating optimization, 108
amplitude spectrum, 53
analog, 18
Anderson, 5
AO, 108
AR model, 82
ARIMA model, 82
ARMA model, 82
ARMAX model, 82
auto-associator, 47
automation pyramid, 1
autoregressive model, 82
average linkage, 105
axis-parallel projection, 36
backpropagation algorithm, 71
Bayes classifier, 88
Bayes theorem, 88
beta transform, 115
between-class variance, 92
bioinformatics, 109
biology, 2
biomedical data, 2
bipartial correlation, 57
bubble function, 120
business data, 1
business process, 1
Butterworth filter, 29
c-means, 108
kernelized, 116
relational, 115
C4.5, 100
C5.0, 100
calibration, 22
CART, 100
Cauchy function, 111
causality, 57
CE, 119
CHAID, 100
chi-square automatic interaction detection, 100
chi-square test, 58
fuzzy, 60
city block norm, 12
class, 7
classification, 85
classification and regression tree, 100
classification entropy, 119
classifier, 86
Bayes, 88
C4.5, 100
C5.0, 100
CART, 100
CHAID, 100
chi-square automatic interaction detection, 100
classification and regression tree, 100
decision tree, 97
fuzzy learning vector quantization, 96
ID3, 99
iterative dichotomiser, 99
k-nearest neighbors, 95
learning vector quantization, 96
linear discrimination, 91
nearest neighbor, 95
cluster tendency assessment, 117
cluster validity, 118
clustering, 103
average linkage, 105
c-means, 108
circles, 114
CM, 108
complete linkage, 105
DBSCAN, 107
elliptotypes, 113
FCE, 113
FCL, 113
FCM, 110
FCS, 114
FCV, 113
fuzzy, 109
fuzzy c-means, 110
GK, 112
Gustafson-Kessel, 112
kernelized, 116
lines, 113
medoids, 114
NC, 111
noise, 111
non-Euclidean, 116
PCM, 111
possibilistic c-means, 111
prototype-based, 107
RCM, 115
relational, 114
RFCM, 115
RNC, 115

RPCM, 115
SAHN, 105
SDHN, 107
sequential, 105
sequential agglomerative hierarchical nonoverlapping, 105
sequential divisive hierarchical nonoverlapping, 107
shells, 114
single linkage, 105
tendency, 117
validity, 118
varieties, 113
Ward, 106
CM, 108
kernelized, 116
relational, 115
complete linkage, 105
computational intelligence, 2
conditional correlation, 57
constant data, 23
control, 1
convex hull, 117
correlation, 55
bipartial, 57
conditional, 57
linear, 55
multiple, 57
nonlinear, 58
partial, 57
spurious, 57
cosine similarity, 14
covariance, 55
CRISP-DM, 2
cross industry standard process for data mining, 2
cross-validation, 74
customer segmentation, 1
data
biomedical, 2
business, 1
constant, 23
exotic, 23
image, 2
industrial process, 1
invalid, 23
Iris, 5
labeled, 85
relational, 10
text and structured, 1
training, 74
unlabeled, 103
validation, 74
data analytics, 2
data base, 2
data mining, 2
data preprocessing, 21
data scale, 7
data visualization, 35
DBSCAN, 107
decision tree, 97
deep web, 2
delta rule, 70
density-based spatial clustering of applications with noise, 107
deterministic error, 22
Diaconis, 49
diagonal norm, 12
diagram, 35
Dice similarity, 14
discrete linear filter, 27
discrimination, 92
dissimilarity, 11
distance, 11
DNA sequence, 2
drift, 22
e-mail, 2
edit distance, 15
eigendecomposition, 41
eigenvector projection, 37
elliptotype, 113
entropy, 98
error, 21
training, 74
type I, 86
type II, 86
validation, 74
error of the first kind, 86
error of the second kind, 86
Euclidean norm, 11, 12
evolutionary algorithm, 77, 111
exotic data, 23
exponential filter, 26
fall out, 87
fallacy, third cause, 57
false alarm rate, 87
false classification rate, 87
false classifications, 86
false negative, 86
false negative rate, 87
false positive, 86
false positive rate, 87
FCE, 113
FCL, 113
FCM, 110
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
relational, 115
FCS, 114
FCV, 113
feature, 7
feature selection, 76
feature vector, 9
feedforward neural network, 68
filter, 25
finite impulse response, 28
finite state machine, 79
finite unfolding, 82
FIR, 28
Fisher, 5
Fisher's linear discriminant analysis, 92
Fisher-Z transformation, 32
FLVQ, 96
forecasting, 79
Fourier cosine transform, 51
Fourier sine transform, 51
Fourier theorem, 50
fraud, 1
Freedman, 49
Frobenius norm, 12
fuzziness, 110
fuzzy c-elliptotypes, 113
fuzzy c-lines, 113
fuzzy c-means, 110
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
relational, 115
fuzzy c-shells, 114
fuzzy c-varieties, 113
fuzzy chi-square test, 60
fuzzy clustering, 109
fuzzy histogram, 49
fuzzy learning vector quantization, 96

Gaussian function, 120
Gaussian kernel, 94, 116
gene, 2
generalized delta rule, 71
generalized mean, 8,12
genome, 2
geometric mean, 8

GK, 112
gradient descent, 124
Gustafson-Kessel, 112
Hamming distance, 13
harmonic mean, 8
hexagonal, 119
Hilbert-Schmidt norm, 12
histogram, 48, 58
fuzzy, 49
hit rate, 87
Hopkins index, 117
Hotelling transform, 37
Huber function, 68
hyperbolic norm, 11
hyperbolic tangent, 32, 69
hyperbolic tangent kernel, 94, 116
hypercube, 31
ID3, 99
IIR, 28
image data, 2
industrial process data, 1
infimum norm, 12
infinite impulse response, 28
inlier, 23
inner product norm, 11
interval scale, 8
invalid data, 23
Iris data, 5
irrelevance, 86
iterative dichotomiser, 99
Jaccard similarity, 14
k-nearest neighbors classifier, 95
Karhunen-Loève transform, 37
kCM, 116
KDD, 2
kernel
Gaussian, 94, 116
hyperbolic tangent, 94, 116
linear, 94
polynomial, 94
RBF, 94
kernel trick, 94, 116
kFCM, 116
kNERFCM, 116
kNERPCM, 116
knowledge discovery, 2
knowledge extraction, 2
kPCM, 116
labeled data, 85
Lagrange optimization, 125
lazy learning, 95
learning
lazy, 95
supervised, 85
unsupervised, 103
learning vector quantization, 96
fuzzy, 96
least trimmed squares, 68
leave one out, 75
Lebesgue norm, 11
Levenshtein distance, 15
linear autoregressive model, 82
linear correlation, 55
linear discriminant analysis, 91
linear kernel, 94
linear regression, 63
least trimmed squares, 68
nonlinear substitution, 67
robust, 68
logistic function, 69
logistics, 1
LVQ, 96
fuzzy, 96
machine learning, 2
machine learning data base, 5
Mahalanobis norm, 12, 112
Manhattan norm, 12
manufacturing, 1
MATLAB, 3
matrix decomposition, 41
MDS, 41
Mealy machine, 80
mean
generalized, 8, 12
geometric, 8
harmonic, 8
quadratic, 8
measurement error, 21
median, 7
median filter, 26
medicine, 2
medoid, 114
membership function, 50
Mercer's theorem, 94
Minkowski norm, 11
MLP, 68
mode, 7
monitoring, 1
Moore machine, 80
moving average, 25
moving mean, 25
moving median, 26
multidimensional scaling, 41
multilayer perceptron, 68
multiple correlation, 57
naive Bayes classifier, 88
NaN, 24
NC, 111
relational, 115
nearest neighbor (c-means), 108
nearest neighbor classifier, 95
nearest neighbor correction, 24
negative false classification rate, 87
negative predictive value, 87
negativity, 87
Nelder-Mead, 125
NERFCM, 116
kernelized, 116
NERPCM, 116
kernelized, 116
neural network, 68
neuron, 68
Newton's method, 125
noise, 21
noise clustering, 111
relational, 115
nominal scale, 7
non-Euclidean relational fuzzy c-means, 116
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean relational possibilistic c-means, 116
kernelized, 116
nonlinear correlation, 58
nonlinear substitution, 67
norm, 11
city block, 12
diagonal, 12
Euclidean, 11, 12
Frobenius, 12
Hilbert-Schmidt, 12
hyperbolic, 11
infimum, 12
inner product, 11
Lebesgue, 11

Mahalanobis, 12, 112
Manhattan, 12
Minkowski, 11
supremum, 13
not a number, 24
Nyquist condition, 17
object, 7
ontology, 2
operations research, 2
optimization
alternating, 108
gradient descent, 124
Lagrange, 125
Nelder-Mead, 125
sequential programming, 125
simplex, 125
with derivatives, 123
ordinal scale, 7
outlier, 21, 117
overfitting, 74
overlap similarity, 14
partial correlation, 57
partition, 103
partition coefficient, 119
partition matrix, 107
fuzzy, 110
pattern recognition, 2
PC, 119
PCA, 37
PCM, 111
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
relational, 115
Pearson correlation, 56
phase spectrum, 53
polynomial kernel, 94
polynomial regression, 67
positive false classification rate, 87
positive predictive value, 87
positivity, 87
possibilistic c-means, 111
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
relational, 115
PR breakeven point, 88
PR diagram, 88
precision, 87
precision recall breakeven point, 88
precision recall diagram, 88
preprocessing, 21
principal component analysis, 37
projection, axis-parallel, 36
proper orthogonal decomposition, 37
protein, 2
prototype, 96
prototype-based clustering, 107
proximity, 13
pruning, 100
pseudoinverse, 66
pyramid, automation, 1
quadratic mean, 8
quantization, 17
R, 3
radial basis function, 72
Rapid Miner, 3
ratio scale, 8
RBF, 72
RCM, 115
RCMdd, 114
recall, 87
receiver operating characteristic, 87
rectangular, 119
recurrent model, 80
reformulation, 115
regression, 63
least trimmed squares, 68
linear, 63
nonlinear substitution, 67
polynomial, 67
robust, 68
relation, 10
sequence, 15
relational c-means, 115
relational c-medoids, 114
relational clustering, 114
relational data, 10
relational fuzzy c-means, 115
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
relational fuzzy c-medoids, 114
relational noise clustering, 115
relational noise clustering with medoids, 114
relational possibilistic c-means, 115
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
relational possibilistic
c-medoids, 114
relevance, 86
RFCM, 115
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
RFCMdd, 114
RNC, 115
RNCMdd, 114
robust regression, 68
ROC, 87
rounding, 18
RPCM, 115
kernelized, 116
non-Euclidean, 116
RPCMdd, 114
s-shaped function, 69
SAHN, 105
sales, 1
Sammon mapping, 44
sampling, 17
SAS, 3
satellite, 2
scale, 7
scaling, 22
scatter diagram, 35
Scott, 49
SDHN, 107
self-organizing map, 119
semantics, 2
sensitivity, 87
sensor, 1
sequence relation, 15
sequential agglomerative hierarchical nonoverlapping, 105
sequential clustering, 105
sequential divisive hierarchical nonoverlapping, 107
sequential linear programming, 125
sequential programming, 125
sequential quadratic programming, 125
Shannon's sampling theorem, 17
Shepard diagram, 42
shopping basket analysis, 1
sigmoid function, 69
signal, 17
signal theory, 2
similarity, 13
cosine, 14
Dice, 14
Jaccard, 14
overlap, 14
Tanimoto, 14
simplex algorithm, 125
simulated annealing, 77
single linkage, 105
singular value decomposition, 37
software, 3
specificity, 87
spectral analysis, 50
spectrum, 53
SPSS, 3
spurious correlation, 57
standardization, 31
STATISTICA, 3
statistics, 2
stochastic errors, 21

Sturgess, 49
supervised learning, 85
supply chain, 1
support vector machine, 93
supremum norm, 13
SVD, 37
SVM, 93
swarm intelligence, 77, 111
Tanimoto similarity, 14
tendency assessment, 117
text and structured data, 1
text document, 2
third cause fallacy, 57
tool, 3
Torgerson, 43
total order, 7
training data, 74
training error, 74
transmission error, 21
true classification rate, 87
true classifications, 86
true negative, 86
true negative rate, 87
true positive, 86
true positive rate, 87
type I error, 86
type II error, 86
universal approximator, 68
unlabeled data, 103
unsupervised learning, 103
validation, 74
validation data, 74
validation error, 74
visualization, 35
Voronoi diagram, 97
Ward's measure, 106
web, 2
WEKA, 3
within-class variance, 92
within-cluster covariance, 112

